



Chapter 1 - Swahili Spelling and Pronunciation

A - THE SWAHILI ALPHABET :

The basic principle which was retained to establish the Swahili alphabet, is that every distinct sound or phoneme should always be transcribed by the same distinct written form (either a single letter, or a cluster of letters), and conversely.

The Swahili alphabet includes :

- 23 single letters : **a, b, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, r, s, t, u, v, w, y, z.**
- The letters **q** and **x** are not used. The letter **c**, although present, is never used alone.
- 9 digraphs : **ch, dh, gh, kh, ng', ny, sh, th, ts.**

1. VOWELLS :

SPELLING	PHONEME	EXAMPLE	English equivalent
A, a	[a]	baba (father)	<i>far, but cut short</i>
E, e	[e]	debe (gallon)	bed
I, i	[i]	kiti (chair)	kit
O, o	[o]	moto (fire)	off, lot
U, u	[u]	kuku (chicken)	too, to

As you can see in this table, Swahili contains 5 vowels. These are pronounced openly, without diphthongs, like in Spanish or in Italian. They must always be kept short.

2. CLUSTER OF VOWELS :

Unlike in English, two (or three) written vowels that follow each other never merge together to form a single sound. Each keeps its own sound.

For example : **ou** is pronounced "o-oo" as in "go", **au** is pronounced "a-oo" as in "cow", **ei** is pronounced "e-ee" as in

"bay", **ai** is pronounced "a-ee" as in "tie", etc.

In theory, any vowel can be in succession with any other one.

It is not unfrequent to meet two similar vowels in succession : they must be pronounced as one long vowel :

Naam !	(= Yes ?)	Juu	(= on top)	Kuu	(= principal)
Zii !	(= Down !)	Mzee	(= old)	Jogoo	(= cock)

3. SEMIVOWELS :

SPELLING	PHONEME	EXAMPLE	English Equivalent
W, w	[w]	wewe (you)	why, week
Y, y	[j]	yeye (he, she)	yes, you

4. SIMPLE CONSONANTS :

SPELLING	PHONEME	EXAMPLE	English Equivalent
B, b	[b]	baba (father)	bad
D, d	[d]	dada (sister)	do
F, f	[f]	kufaa (to suit)	far
G, g	[g]	gari (car)	got
H, h	[h]	haya ! (O.K. !)	hat
J, j	[ɕ]	juu (on top)	John
K, k	[k]	kuku (chicken)	kid, cat
L, l	[l]	lala ! (sleep !)	lot
M, m	[m]	Mama (mother)	man
N, n	[n]	na (and, with)	no
P, p	[p]	papa (shark)	pot
R, r	[r]	rangi (colour)	rat
S, s	[s]	saa (clock, time)	soap
T, t	[t]	taa (lamp)	toy
V, v	[v]	kuvaa (to wear)	very
Z, z	[z]	-zuri (nice, good)	zoo, easy

While most of the consonants are similar to the English ones and do not offer any difficulty, special care must be paid to :

- **f** : it has always the sound of the "f" in "fat", never that of the "f" in "of".
- **g** : it is always hard like in "got". It should never be pronounced soft like the "g" in "gin".
- **s** : it has always the sound of the "s" in "sad", never that of the "s" in "is" or "easy".

5. COMBINATIONS OF CONSONANTS :

SPELLING	PHONEME	EXAMPLE	English Equivalent
Ch, ch	[tʃ]	chai (tea)	chat, church
Dh, dh	[ð]	dhahabu (gold)	this, that
Gh, gh	[R]	ghali (expensive)	in French : "rare"
Kh, kh	[χ]	subalkheri (good morning)	in Scottish : "loch"
Ng', ng'	[ŋ]	ng'ombe (cow)	singer
Ny, ny	[ɲ]	nyota (star)	new
Sh, sh	[ʃ]	shule (school)	shoe
Th, th	[θ]	thelathini (thirty)	think

Most of the real difficulties of Swahili are concentrated here. It is however important to try and pronounce these sounds correctly :

- **dh** and **th** are both written "th" in English. **dh** is voiced as in "the", "this", "that", "with" ... While **th** is unvoiced as in "think", "thin", "both" ...
stakabadhi (= a receipt), **hadithi** (= a story).
- **gh** and **kh** are pronounced at the back of the throat. **gh** is voiced and close to the French "r" in "rare" :
ghali (= expensive), **shughuli** (= affair, activity).
kh is unvoiced and corresponds to a scraping of the throat :
subalkheri (= good morning).
- **ng'** although similar in sound to the English "ng" in "singing" poses a difficulty, for it usually occurs at the initial of words. It is luckily quite rare :
ng'ambo (= foreign), **ng'ombe** (= a cow).

6. THE SYLLABIC CONSONANT "M" :

The syllable **M** corresponds to the class prefix **MU-** (Class 1 and Class 3) whose **U** has been dropped. However, the "m" doesn't merge with the following consonant and should be pronounced somewhat like "humm !".
The **M** syllabic can be accentuated (stressed syllable) in short words such as : **mtu** (= a person), **mti** (= a tree), **mji** (= a town, a city), etc..

SPELLING	EXAMPLE	TRANSLATION
Mb	Mbuyu	baobab
Mch	Mchezo	game
Mf	Mfano	example
Mg	Mgeni	guest, foreigner
Mj	Mji	town, city
Mk	Mke	wife
Ml	Mlango	door
Mm	Mmea	plant, crop
Mn	Mnara	minaret, tower
Mp	Mpira	ball, pipe, tube
Ms	Msafiri	traveller
Msh	Mshahara	salary
Mt	Mtoto	child
Mv	Mvuvi	fisherman
Mz	Mzungu	white man

B - SYLLABE, STRESS AND PRONUNCIATION :

The Swahili syllable is said to be open, for it always ends on a vowel sound. For example :

KI-SWA-HI-LI (= Swahili) **JA-MBO** (= hello !)

NG'O-MBE (= a cow) **N-NE** (= four)

M-ZU-NGU (= a white man)

TA-NZA-NI-A (= Tanzania)

An extra vowel is usually added in loanwords, in order to conform to the open syllable pattern. For example :

O-I-LI (= oil) **SHI-LI-NGI** (= shilling) **BE-NKI** (= bank)

PE-TRO-LI (= petrol) **NA-NA-SI** (= pineapple) **SHA-TI** (= shirt)

The stress usually falls on the last but one syllable of a word. There are however a small number of exceptions, on words of Arabic origin. For example : **lazima** (= it is necessary) : /'lazima/ .

Compare also : **barabara** (= a road) : /bara'bara/ , and **barabara** (= very well) : /ba'rabara/ .

To listen to examples of words and phrases pronounced in Swahili, we invite you to visit the following page on Hassan O. Ali's excellent Swahili site : [useful_swahili_words](#).

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Read aloud the following words :

- a. Kaa, taa, saa, jaa, njaa, maana, chai, yai, zaidi, faida, laini, hao, wao, au, bilauri, sauti, dau, mzee, bei, cheo, leo, nyeupe, nyeusi, njia, kiasi, kulia, pia, siagi, raia, zii, hii, kiu, kiumbe, kuo, kupoa, kuzoea, choo, njoo, jogoo, kioo, ndoo, shikamoo, fua, barua, mvua, adui, kuzuia, huo, uongo, juu, huu, kuu.
- b. Wewe, wiki, dawa, bwana, kiswahili, ya, yao, hayo, yeye, mayai.
- c. Baba, bado, bata, barabara, marahaba, dada, debe, duka, baada, kufaa, fisi, afya, hafifu, gunia, kugawa, gari, kujenga, haba, hapa, hodi, sahihi, jembe, jambo, kujua, jibu, juzijuzi, kaka, kukaa, haraka, kidogo, kibaba, la, lakini, kulia, kubali, mama, muwa, mamlaka, na, naam, nanasi, nukta, neno, papa, pana, pole, kupaka, lipa, ruka, robo, starehe, sisi, siri, sababu, asante, tatu, tele, tisa, tafuta, matuta, kuvaa, vema, kavu, viti, uvivu.
- d. Chui, cheo, chafu, chache, dharau, fedha, dhahabu, ramadhani, ghali, ghafula, shughuli, lugha, subalkheri, ng'ambo, ng'ombe, ng'oa, nyuma, nyota, nyoka, shida, shilingi, shule, safisha, thumni, hadithi.
- e. Mbu, mbwa, mjinga, mhindi, mfalme, mchezo, mji, mkate, mlima, mnazi, mpaka, msaada, mstari, mswaki, mzungu.
- f. Tafadhali, magharibi, mashariki, nywele, kuchemsha, mchanganyiko, nyang'anya, masalkheri, thelathini, mgonjwa, maharagwe.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 2 - Greetings

Swahili people pay a lot of importance to the exchange of greetings. Politeness recommends that you dedicate some moments to greeting a person and enquiring about his/her health, his/her activities, and possibly about his/her close relations, especially if you didn't meet each other for quite a while. It is only after this good humoured though formal exchange that you will brooch into the heart of the matter, or that you'll take leave of the person, with abundant goodbyes !

1. COMMON GREETINGS :

GREETINGS		ANSWERS	
- Jambo !	= Hello !	- Jambo !	= Hello !
- Jambo Bwana.	= Hello, Sir.	- Jambo !	= Hello !
- Jambo Mama.	= Hello, Madam.	- Jambo !	= Hello !
- Salama ?	= Are you fine ?	- Salama !	= Fine !
- Mambo (vipi) ?	= How are things ?	- Poa tu ! / Safi !	= Cool !

But this is just for the tourists ! Whenever possible, prefer using these more authentic greetings, that will make you pass for a real "mswahili" :

- Hujambo !	= How are you ?	- Sijambo !	= I am fine !
- Hamjambo !	= How are you ? (<i>Plur</i>)	- Hatujambo !	= We are fine !
- Shikamoo !	= My respects ! (<i>to an elder person</i>)	- Marahaba !	= Thank you.

2. THE EXCHANGE OF NEWS :

These simple greetings are often followed by more precise questions, on the time of the day, the health, the family, the children, etc...

All these questions start with the word **HABARI** which means "news".

There are two possibilities : either you are expecting a precise answer : in this case you use **Habari ya ... ?** (= What's the news of ... ?), or you are simply asking out of mere politeness, without any precise intention, in that case you use **Habari za ... ?** (= What are the news of ... ?).

- Habari ?	- What's new ?
- Habari gani ?	- How are you ?
- Habari yako / zako ?	- What are your news ?

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| - Habari ya / za leo ? | - How are you today ? |
| - Habari ya / za asubuhi ? | - How are you this morning ? |
| - Habari ya / za mchana ? | - How are you this afternoon ? |
| - Habari ya / za jioni ? | - How are you this evening ? |
| - Habari ya / za nyumbani ? | - What about your home ? |
| - Habari ya / za kazi ? | - What about your work ? |
| - Habari ya / za mtoto ? | - How is the child ? |
| - Habari ya / za safari ? | - How is/was your journey ? |

Except in case of misfortune (death, serious illness, etc...) you will invariably answer with :

- Njema ! or - Nzuri ! or - Salama ! = Fine !



Chakubanga

- Haya ! Bwana Chaku habari gani ?
- Habari nikuulize wewe uliyelundika nguo kichwani ukaacha mapajani je una kichaa ?
- So ! Mr Chaku how are you ?
- I should return your question, you who piled your skirt on your head, say, are you mad ?

3. OTHER COMMON EXPRESSIONS :

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| - Subalkheri ! | - Good morning ! (<i>Arabic greeting</i>) |
| - Masalkheri ! | - Good evening ! (<i>Arabic greeting</i>) |
| - Hamjambo nyumbani ? | - How is the family ? |
| - U hali gani ? | - How are you ? |
| - U mzima ? | - Your health is good ? |
| - (Ni) mzima | - I am well. |
| - Na wewe ? | - And you ? |
| - Na wewe pia ? | - And you (are you well) ? |
| - Haya ! | - So ! / O.K. ! / Let's go ! |

- | | |
|-----------------|--|
| - Naam ! | - Yes ? (<i>In answer to a call</i>) |
| - Ndiyo | - Yes |
| - Siyo / Hapana | - No |
| - Aha ! | - No ! |
| - Tafadhali | - Please |
| - Asante (sana) | - Thank you (very much) |
| - Hamna shida | - Don't mention it / No problem |

When a person feels poor or has undergone a bereavement, you tell him / her :

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| - Pole ! | - Sorry ! |
| - Pole na msiba wako ! | - My sincere sympathy ! |

When a person goes on a journey, you can also tell him / her :

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| - Pole na safari ! | - Be careful ! |
| - Safari njema ! | - Have a good journey ! |

The expected answer is naturally always :

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| - Asante ! | - Thank you ! |
|------------|---------------|

4. VISITING SOMEBODY AT HOME :

To announce your presence to somebody, you shout in front of the door :

- | | |
|----------|--------------------|
| - Hodi ! | - Anybody's home ? |
|----------|--------------------|

To which the person answers :

- | | |
|--------------|---|
| - Karibu ! | - You're welcome ! |
| - Karibuni ! | - You're all welcome ! (<i>To several people</i>) |
| - Starehe ! | - Feel at ease ! |

to which you always answer :

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| - Asante ! | - Thank you ! |
| - Asanteni ! | - Thank you ! (<i>To several people</i>) |

5. GOOD-BYES :

The word to say goodbye is **Kwa heri !** which means literally : blessing, or happiness, or "Best of luck !"

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| - Kwa heri ! | - Good bye ! (<i>To a single person</i>) |
| - Kwa herini ! | - Good bye ! (<i>To several people</i>) |
| - Kwa heri ya kuonana ! | - See you soon ! |
| - Tutaonana ! | - See you again. |
| - Tutaonana kesho. | - See you tomorrow ! |
| - Asubuhi njema. | - Have a good morning ! |

When taking leave at night, you can wish :

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------|
| - Usiku mwema ! | - Good night ! |
|------------------------|----------------|

At the time of sleeping, you can also wish :

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------|
| - Lala salama ! | - Sweet dreams ! |
|------------------------|------------------|

[NOW, LEARN THE SONG : JAMBO :](#)

Jambo !
Jambo Bwana !
Habari gani ?
Nzuri sana !

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Click on the lion to get the exercise :

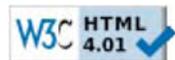


EXERCISE 2 : translate into English :

1. - Hodi !
2. - Karibu !
3. - Starehe !
4. - Jambo mama !
5. - Jambo bwana !
6. - Hamjambo nyumbani ?
7. - Njema. Habari zako ?
8. - Nzuri sana. Haya, kwa heri !
9. - Asante. Kwa heri ya kuonana !
10. - Haya ! Tutaonana kesho.

EXERCISE 3 : Translate into Swahili :

1. - Hello ! How are you ? - I am fine.
2. - How is work ? - Fine.
3. - What about home ? - Fine.
4. - Sorry ! - Thank you very much.
5. - My respects - Thank you.
6. - Anybody's home ? - Welcome !
7. - How is the health ? - Well.
8. - Hello ! - Hello !
9. - Good bye. See you tomorrow. - OK !
10. - Good night, sweet dreams ! - Thank you, the same to you.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 3 - The Infinitive

1. GENERALITIES

The main characteristic of the Swahili verb is its agglutinative aspect. In order to be functional, to be conjugated and be part of the sentence, we must attach to it a certain number of affixes : prefixes, infixes and suffixes, according to the situation. All these affixes possess a precise position and function. The general position scheme of these affixes in relation to the verb radical is as follows :

Pre-Prefix + Subject Prefix + Tense marker + Object Infix + **RADICAL + Derivation + Suffix + Post-Suffix**

Luckily enough, it is very rare for a verb to possess all these affixes at one and the same time ! These different affixes and their functions will all be explained along the following chapters.

2. THE INFINITIVE

In English, the infinitive is shown by the word **TO** placed before the verb.
In Swahili, the infinitive is marked by the prefix **KU-** attached to the verb radical.

KU + RADICAL

EXAMPLES :

KU-FIKA	to arrive	KU-PATA	to have, to find, to get
KU-FANYA	to do	KU-PIGA	to strike, to hit
KU-JUA	to know	KU-KAMATA	to catch
KU-SIKIA	to hear	KU-SOMA	to read, to learn
KU-ANGALIA	to look at	KU-WEKA	to put

As shown through these different examples, the radical of the Swahili verbs of Bantu origin ends in **-A** in the infinitive. There are however a few exceptions, especially with verbs of Arabic origin, which end in **-E**, **-I** or **-U**.

3. SOME VERBS OF ARABIC ORIGIN :

Ku-badili	to exchange	Ku-jaribu	to try
Ku-baki	to stay	Ku-jibu	to answer
Ku-faulu	to succeed	Ku-kefi	to sit
Ku-fikiri	to think	Ku-rudi	to return, to come back
Ku-furahi	to rejoice	Ku-safiri	to travel
Ku-haribu	to destroy	Ku-samehe	to forgive

4. A LIST OF COMMON VERBS :

Ku-anguka	to fall	Ku-ona	to see
Ku-chukua	to seize, to take	Ku-penda	to love
Ku-faa	to fit	Ku-pika	to cook
Ku-fuata	to follow	Ku-safisha	to clean
Ku-funga	to close	Ku-sema	to say, to tell
Ku-fungua	to open	Ku-simama	to stop
Ku-kaa	to stay, to live	Ku-tafuta	to look for
Ku-kata	to cut, to reduce	Ku-taka	to want
Ku-leta	to bring	Ku-tupa	to throw
Ku-ngoja	to wait	Ku-uza	to sell
Ku-nunua	to buy	Ku-weza	to be able

5. MONOSYLLABIC VERBS :

Ku-fa	to die	Ku-wa	to be
Ku-ja	to come	Ku-wa na	to have
Ku-la	to eat	Kw-enda	to go
Ku-nywa	to drink	Kw-isha	to end

NOTE :

The last two verbs, **Kw-isha** and **Kw-enda**, although disyllabic, have been included in this table because they behave like monosyllabic verbs in their conjugation.

We also note that the **U** of **KU-** weakens into **W** before the vowel **E** or **I** of the radical.

6. THE NEGATIVE INFINITIVE :

Swahili possesses a negative infinitive. It is obtained by inserting the infix **-TO-** between the infinitive prefix **KU-** and the radical of the verb. An extra **KU-**, which is compulsory in the case of monosyllabic verbs, is sometimes added before the radical.

KU + TO (+ KU) + RADICAL

EXAMPLES :

	<u>Affirmative</u>		<u>Negative</u>
Kusoma	to read	-> Kuto(ku)soma	not to read
Kufanya	to do	-> Kuto(ku)fanya	not to do
Kujibu	to answer	-> Kuto(ku)jibu	not to answer
Kurudi	to come back	-> Kuto(ku)rudi	not to come back
Kula	to eat	-> Kutokula	not to eat
Kufa	to die	-> Kutokufa	not to die

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into swahili :

- a. To learn, to catch, to arrive, to try, to wait, to look at, to see, to hear, to think, to answer, to strike, to have, to do, to know, to love, to go, to come, to drink, to eat, to be, to clean, to want, to sit, to come back, to succeed.
- b. Not to find, not to catch, not to do, not to try, not to know, not to come back, not to stay, not to bring, not to wait, not to say, not to buy, not to sell, not to read, not to hear, not to stop.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

- a. **Kuweka, kubaki, kusafiri, kusamehe, kuanguka, kukaa, kusimama, kuuza, kununua, kupika, kwisha, kusema, kufunga, kufungua, kuleta, kufa, kufaa, kujibu, kujaribu, kufurahi, kubadili, kuweza, kuketi, kufuata, kutafuta.**
- b. **Kutokuwa, kutokunywa, kutokula, kutokuja, kutoweka, kutofika, kutofaulu, kutofurahi, kutosafiri, kutofaa, kutokuona, kutokupika, kutotaka, kutokuweza, kutofikiri.**



Chapter 4 - The Imperative

1. The Direct Imperative :

The Direct Imperative is used to give an "abrupt" order, as would a boss to an employee, or a parent to a child. It is the most simple verbal form, since it is simply made of the verb radical.

If we take the verb **KUFANYA** for example, we simply remove the infinitive prefix **KU-**, which gives : **FANYA !** = do !

The Direct Imperative possesses only 2 persons : the second person singular (= "you" singular) and the second person plural (= "you" plural).

The plural is formed by replacing the ending **-A** of the radical by the suffix **-ENI**.

SOME VERBS IN THE DIRECT IMPERATIVE :

2 nd person singular		2 nd person plural	
Fanya !	do !	Fanyeni !	do !
Funga !	close !	Fungeni !	close !
Fungua !	open !	Fungueni !	open !
Kamata !	catch !	Kamateni !	catch !
Ngoja !	wait !	Ngojeni !	wait !
Safisha !	clean !	Safisheni !	clean !
Sikia !	hear !	Sikieni !	hear !
Soma !	read ! / learn !	Someni !	read ! / learn !

PARTICULAR CASES:

- Monosyllabic verbs keep the prefix **KU-** of the infinitive :

Kula !	eat !	Kuleni !	eat !
Kunywa !	drink !	Kunyweni !	drink !

- Verbs of Arabic origin, behave as verbs of Bantu origin in the second person singular. In the second person plural, we add **-NI** at the end of the radical, without modifying the final vowel (**E, I** ou **U**) :

Jaribu !	try !	Jaribuni !	try !
Rudi !	come back !	Rudini !	come back !
(Ni-)samehe !	forgive(-me) !	(Ni-)sameheni !	forgive(-me) !

EXCEPTIONS :

- The verb **KULETA** (= to bring) makes **LETE !** (= bring !) instead of **LETA** in the second person singular.
- The verb **KUJA** (= to come) makes **NJOO !** (= come !) and **NJOONI !** (= come !).
- The verb **KWENDA** (= to go) makes **NENDA !** (= go !) and **NENDENI !** (= go !).



Chakubanga

- Naona hiyo chai imepoa. Nenda kaipashe moto tena.
- Chakubanga ! Una kunguni tumboni siku hizi ?

- I can see the tea is cool. Go and warm it again.
- Chakubanga ! Have you got bugs in your stomach these days ?

2. THE POLITE IMPERATIVE :

In Swahili, as in many other languages, the more you lengthen the verbal formula when giving an order, the more you soften its "abruptness", and the more you show yourself polite.

Compare for instance in English : Come ! / Can you come ! / Are you coming ? / Would you like to come ? / I wish you would come / etc...

A common way of easing the rough edge of an order is to use the subjunctive. (See: [Chapter 33 - The Subjunctive.](#))

This is done by removing the prefix **KU-** of the infinitive and by replacing the ending **-A** with **-E**.

The second person singular begins with the pronominal prefix **U-**.

While the second person plural begins with the pronominal prefix **M-**.

SUBJECT PREFIX + VERB RADICAL + ESOME VERBS IN THE POLITE IMPERATIVE :

2nd person singular		2nd person plural	
Ufanye !	do !	Mfanye !	do !
Ufungue !	close !	Mfungue !	close !
Ulete !	bring !	Mlete !	bring !
Upike !	cook !	Mpike !	cook !
Usafishe !	clean !	Msafishe !	clean !

VERBS OF ARABIC ORIGIN :

Ujaribu !	try !	Mjaribu !	try !
Urudi !	come back !	Mrudi !	come back !
Usamehe !	forgive !	Msamehe !	forgive !

MONOSYLLABIC VERBS :

Uende !	go !	Mwende !	go !
Uje !	come !	Mje !	come !
Ule !	eat !	Mle !	eat !
Unywe !	drink !	Mnywe !	drink !

3. THE IMPERATIVE OF THE 1st PERSON PLURAL :

So far we have studied the imperative of the 2nd person (singular and plural). It's now time to see the imperative of the 1st person plural (we). Actually, it is built exactly on the same pattern as the polite imperative, simply replacing the subject prefix **U-** (= you) by **TU-** (= we).

TU + VERB RADICAL + E

SOME EXAMPLES :

1st person plural	
Tufanye !	let's make !
Tufunge !	let's close !
Tufungue !	let's open !
Tulete !	let's bring !
Tupike !	let's cook !

Tusafishe ! let's clean !

VERBS OF ARABIC ORIGIN :

Tujaribu ! let's try !

Tusamehe ! let's forgive !

MONOSYLLABIC VERBS :

Twende ! let's go !

Tule ! let's eat !

Tuwe ! let's be !

4. THE NEGATIVE IMPERATIVE :

There is only one negative form corresponding both to the direct imperative and to the polite imperative.

The negation is formed in the following way :

- Remove the prefix **KU-** of the infinitive,
- add the pronominal prefix **U-** for the singular and **M-** for the plural,
- insert the negative infix **-SI-** between the pronoun and the radical,
- replace the verb ending **-A** with **-E** in the case of verbs of Bantu origin.

EXAMPLES :

<u>Bantu verb :</u>	KU-FANYA	-> -FANYA	-> U-SI-FANY-E
<u>Arabic verb :</u>	KU-JIBU	-> -JIBU	-> U-SI-JIBU
<u>Monosyllabic verb :</u>	KU-LA	-> -LA	-> U-SI-L-E

SUBJECT PREFIX + SI + VERB RADICAL + E

SOME VERBS IN THE IMPERATIVE :

	<u>2nd person singular</u>		<u>2nd person plural</u>
Usifanye !	don't do !	Msifanye !	don't do !
Usifuate !	don't follow !	Msifuate !	don't follow !
Usiharibu !	don't destroy !	Msiharibu !	don't destroy !
Usijibu !	don't answer !	Msijibu !	don't answer !
Usile !	don't eat !	Msile !	don't eat !

Usilete !	don't bring !	Msilete !	don't bring !
Usingoje !	don't wait !	Msingoje !	don't wait !
Usinywe !	don't drink !	Msinywe !	don't drink !
Usipige !	don't strike !	Msipige !	don't strike !
Usiweke !	don't put !	Msiweke !	don't put !

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Put these verbs in the Direct Imperative :

Kusikia, kurudi, kukamata, kujaribu, kuangalia, kufikiri, kula, kuleta, kutafuta, kusimama, kuja, kwenda, kufunga, kungoja, kwisha.

EXERCISE 2 : Put these verbs in the Polite Imperative :

Kubadili, kufika, kufanya, kusoma, kuweka, kubaki, kujaribu, kusamehe, kununua, kupika, kufuata, kufungua, kuja, kwenda, kusema.

EXERCISE 3 : Put these verbs in the 1st person plural of the Imperative :

Kubadili, kufika, kufanya, kusoma, kuweka, kubaki, kujaribu, kusamehe, kununua, kupika, kufuata, kufungua, kuja, kwenda, kusema.

EXERCISE 4 : Put these verbs in the Negative Imperative :

Kuja, kwenda, kuleta, kupiga, kuuza, kupenda, kusafiri, kujibu, kufikiri, kuangalia, kufika, kukaa, kununua, kujaribu, kubaki.

EXERCISE 5 : Translate into English :

- a. **Njoo ! Nenda ! Fuata ! Fanya ! Piga ! Lete ! Rudi ! Jaribu !**
- b. **Njooi ! Fanyeni ! Jaribuni ! Sameheni ! Leteni ! Fuateni ! Tafuteni ! Nendeni !**
- c. **Upike ! Usafishe ! Mfungue ! Mjaribu ! Ujue ! Uweke ! Mfaulu ! Ule !**
- d. **Usijibu ! Usisome ! Usiende ! Usinywe ! Usiseme ! Usiangalie ! Usiwe ! Usikae !**
- e. **Msifuate ! Msibaki ! Msirudi ! Msifikiri ! Msianguke ! Msifungue ! Msiketi ! Msione !**

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 5 - The Nominal Classes

In swahili, as in any other Bantu languages, substantives are not divided into genders of the masculine / feminine / neutral types, but in nominal classes. Swahili includes 13 nominal classes, plus three extra classes called the locative classes.

In order to rationalize the study of the nominal classes, these can be grouped into 7 "genders" (or categories) that each include 2 classes : one class for the singular and another class for the plural.

The 6th "gender" doesn't possess any specific plural but borrows its plurals from the other classes. The 7th "gender" is made of substantivated verbs and has no plural.

These 7 "genders" loosely correspond to more or less extended semantic categories.

The different nominal classes are recognized and definable by their prefixes, that is to say the first syllable of the noun, which will cause in turn a series of agreements through prefixes (and infixes) on the adjectives, pronouns, demonstratives, possessives, verbs, etc... in the sentence.

Swahili doesn't differentiate between definite or indefinite nouns, and neither does it distinguish between masculine or feminine for names of people.

**Summarized table of the 13 nominal classes in Swahili,
grouped into 7 genders, and the 3 locative classes :**

GENDERS / CLASSES	NOMINAL PREFIXES	EXAMPLES	SEMANTIC CATEGORIES
M-/WA- Cl 1 Singular Cl 2 Plural	M-, MW- WA-, W-	(person) MTU WATU	Names of human beings exclusively, + 2 names of animals. No object.
M-/MI- Cl 3 Singular Cl 4 Plural	M-, MW- MI-, M-	(tree) MTI MITI	Names of trees, plants, nature, parts of the human body, human activities.
JI-/MA- Cl 5 Singular Cl 6 Plural	∅- or JI- MA-	(fruit) TUNDA MATUNDA	Names of fruits, uncountables, everyday life objects, persons, augmentatives, nouns of Arabic origin, etc...
KI-/VI- Cl 7 Singular Cl 8 Plural	KI-, CH- VI-, VY-	(chair) KITI VITI	Everyday objects, animals, parts of the human body, persons, diminutives, languages.
N- Cl 9 Singular Cl 10 Plural	∅- or N- ∅- or N-	(cloth) NGUO NGUO	Abstract and concrete things, persons, animals, natural elements, nouns of foreign origin, etc...
U- Cl. 11, 14 Cl 10 Plural	U-, W- ∅- or N-	(face) USO NYUSO	Nouns of objects (Cl. 11), Singular abstract nouns (Cl. 14).
KU- Cl. 15	KU-, KW-	(reading) KUSOMA	Substantivated verbs.
Cl. Locatives Cl. 16, 17, 18	PA-, KU-, M-	(place) MAHALI	A single noun. They are present in class agreements.



Chapter 6 - The M-/WA- Gender

The **M-/WA-** gender (Classes 1 / 2) contains nouns of persons exclusively, plus two generic nouns of animals. It's the class prefix, i.e. the first syllable of the noun, that distinguishes the singular from the plural. There is no article in front of the noun, which can either be definite or indefinite :



Cl 1 (Singular) :

prefix **M-**

Cl 2 (Plural) :

prefix **WA-**

MTU = a person, the person

WATU = people, the people

In front of a vowel,

the singular prefix **M-** becomes **MW-** :

MWALIMU = a teacher, the teacher

The plural prefix **WA-** becomes **W-** :

WALIMU = teachers, the teachers

1. SOME NOUNS OF THE M-/WA- GENDER :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Mdudu	Wadudu	an insect, insects
Mfaransa	Wafaransa	a French, the French
Mgeni	Wageni	a guest, a foreigner, guests
Mgonjwa	Wagonjwa	a patient, patients
Mhindi	Wahindi	an Indian, Indians
Mjerumani	Wajerumani	a German, Germans
Mjomba	Wajomba	an uncle (maternal), uncles
Mke	Wake	a spouse, a wife, wives
Mkristo	Wakristo	a Christian, Christians
Mkulima	Wakulima	a farmer, farmers
Mnyama	Wanyama	an animal, animals
Mpishi	Wapishi	a cook, cooks
Msichana	Wasichana	a young girl, young girls
Mtoto	Watoto	a child, children

Mtu	Watu	a person, people
Mume	Waume	a husband, husbands
Mvulana	Wavulana	a young man, young men
Mwafrika	Waafrica	an African, Africans
Mwalimu	Walimu	a teacher, teachers
Mwana	Wana	a child, a son, a daughter, children
Mwanadamu	Wanadamu	a human being, (child of Adam)
Mwanafunzi	Wanafunzi	a student, a pupil, students
Mwanamke	Wanawake	a woman, women
Mwanaume	Wanaume	a man, men
Mwarabu	Waarabu	an Arab, Arabs
Mwingereza	Waingereza	an English, the English
Mwislamu	Waislamu	a Muslim, Muslims
Mwitalia	Waitalia	an Italian, Italians
Mwizi	Wezi (a+i = e)	a thief, thieves
Mzee	Wazee	an old man, old men
Mzungu	Wazungu	a white man, white men

2. OTHER NOUNS OF PEOPLE :

Although the **M-/WA-** gender exclusively contains nouns of people, it is not all inclusive. Thus, a certain number of nouns referring to people can be found in other genders : mainly in the **N-** gender (CI 9 / CI 10), the **KI-/VI-** gender (CI 7 / 8) and the **JI-/MA-** gender (CI 5 / 6). Yet, the verbs, adjectives, etc. that agree with them must take Class 1/2 prefix agreements.

Nouns of the N- GENDER (CI 9 / CI 10)

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Baba	Baba	father, dad
Babu	Babu	grand-father
Dada	Dada	sister
Kaka	Kaka	brother
Mama	Mama	mother, mum
Nyanya	Nyanya	grand-mother
Rafiki	Rafiki	friend
Shangazi	Shangazi	aunt (paternal)

Nouns of the KI-/VI- GENDER (Classes 7 / 8) :
--

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Kibarua	Vibarua	a day laborer, laborers
Kijana	Vijana	a youth, youths
Kipofu	Vipofu	a blind man, blind men
Kiziwi	Viziwi	a deaf person, deaf persons

Nouns of the JI-/MA- GENDER (Classes 5 / 6) :
--

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Bwana	Mabwana	Sir, master, gentlemen
Bibi	Mabibi	Madam, ladies
Dereva	Madereva	a driver, drivers

3. CLASS AGREEMENTS :

1. Adjectives : the adjective takes prefixes of class agreements identical to those of the noun : (See : [Chapter 11.](#))

<u>Class 1 :</u>	Mtoto	mkubwa / mdogo / mzuri / mbaya / mwema / ...	
	a	big / small / pretty / bad / nice / ...	child
<u>Class 2 :</u>	Watoto	wakubwa / wadogo / wazuri / wabaya / wema / ...	
		big / small / pretty / bad / nice / ...	children

2. Possessive adjectives :

<u>Class 1 :</u>	Mtoto	wangu / wako / wake / wetu / wenu / wao	
	=	my / your / his - her / our / your / their	child
<u>Class 2 :</u>	Watoto	wangu / wako / wake / wetu / wenu / wao	
	=	my / your / his - her / our / your / their	children

VOCABULARY

Ku-andika	to write	Ku-lia	to cry
Ku-cheza	to play	Ku-lima	to cultivate
Ku-chora	to draw	Ku-pita	to pass
Ku-fagia	to sweep	Ku-ruka	to jump, to fly
Ku-fanya kazi	to work	Ku-toka	to leave, to come from
Ku-ingia	to enter, to come in	Ku-vunja	to break

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. Play ! Sweep ! Work ! Come in ! Leave ! Draw ! Cultivate ! Jump ! Leave (Plur) ! Work (Plur) !
- b. Don't write ! Don't play ! Don't break ! Don't cry ! Don't pass ! Don't write (Plur) ! Don't come in (Plur) ! Don't jump (Plur) ! Don't play (Plur) ! Don't leave (Plur) !
- c. A guest, a child, a young girl, a husband, a man, a woman, a wife, an English, a white man, a Muslim, a cook, a teacher, a thief, an old man, a French.
- d. Human beings, Africans, Indians, French people, people, young men, children (sons / daughters), children, Germans, wives, husbands, pupils, farmers, uncles, animals.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

- a. Mtu, mnyama, mdudu, mwanadamu, mwislamu, mkristo, mzungu, mwafrika, mfaransa, mtoto, mvulana, msichana, baba, kaka, mama, dada, mjomba, shangazi, kipofu, kibarua.
- b. Wakulima, walimu, wanafunzi, vibarua, wanaume, wanawake, waitalia, watu, wageni, wagonjwa, waarabu, wapishi, wezi, wazee, dada, kaka, rafiki, mabibi, mabwana, vijana.

EXERCISE 3 : Put the nouns in the plural :



Chapter 7 - The Subject Pronouns

In Swahili, the subject pronouns have the particularity of being always affixed to the verb as prefixes.

In the 3rd person singular and plural, there is no substitution between the subject noun and the subject prefix, but complementarity : the subject prefix is there, even when the subject noun is already expressed in the sentence.

1. AFFIRMATIVE SUBJECT PREFIXES :

GENDERS / Classes	SINGULAR	Equivalent	PLURAL	Equivalent
1° 2° M-/WA- Gender (Cl 1 / 2) 3°	NI- U- A-	= I = you = he, she	TU- M- WA-	= we = you = they
M-/MI- Gender (Cl 3 / 4)	U-	= it	I-	= they
JI-/MA- Gender (Cl 5 / 6)	LI-	= he / she / it	YA-	= they
KI-/VI- Gender (Cl 7 / 8)	KI-	= he / she / it	VI-	= they
N- Gender (Cl 9 / 10)	I-	= he / she / it	ZI-	= they
U- Gender (Cl 11 / 14)	U-	= it		
KU- Gender (Cl 15)	KU-	= it		
LOCATIVE CLASSES	PA-, KU- or M-	= it		

Only the **M-/WA-** gender (Classes 1 / 2) comprises subject prefixes for the 1st and 2nd persons singular and the 1st and 2nd persons plural.

In the 3rd person singular (he / she / it) and the 3rd person plural (they), the choice of the subject prefix depends on the nominal class to which the corresponding subject noun belongs.

However, when the subject noun represents a person, whatever the class it belongs to, we will use a subject prefix of Class 1 in the singular and Class 2 in the plural, as for the nouns of the **M-/WA-** gender.

EXAMPLES :

Anafika	He / she arrives	(Class 1)
Mama anafika	Mom (she) arrives	(Class 9 -> 1)

Wamelala	They sleep	(Class 2)
Watoto wamelala	The children (they) sleep	(Class 2)
Amekufa	He / she died	(Class 1)
Mgonjwa amekufa	The patient (he) died	(Class 1)
Mbwa amekufa	The dog (it) died	(Class 9 -> 1)
Inafaa	It fits	(Class 9)
Nguo inafaa	The cloth (it) fits	(Class 9)
Zinafaa	They fit	(Class 10)
Nguo zinafaa	The clothes fit	(Class 10)
Linakwenda	It leaves	(Class 5)
Basi linakwenda	The bus (it) leaves	(Class 5)

2. NEGATIVE SUBJECT PREFIXES :

Those result from the combination of the negative pre-prefix **HA-** and the subject prefix, except in the 1st person singular (**SI-**) and the 2nd person singular (**HU-** instead of **HAU-**). Thus :

GENDERS / Classes	SINGULAR	Equivalent	PLURAL	Equivalent
1° 2° M-/WA- Gender (Cl 1 / 2) 3°	SI- HU- HA-	= I don't = you don't = he / she doesn't	HATU- HAM- HAWA-	= we don't = you don't = they don't
M-/MI- Gender (Cl 3 / 4)	HAU-	= it doesn't	HAI-	= they don't
JI-/MA- Gender (Cl 5 / 6)	HALI-	= he / she / it doesn't	HAYA-	= they don't
KI-/VI- Gender (Cl 7 / 8)	HAKI-	= he / she / it doesn't	HAVI-	= they don't
N- Gender (Cl 9 / 10)	HAI-	= he / she / it doesn't	HAZI-	= they don't
U- Gender (Cl 11 / 14)	HAU-	= it doesn't		
KU- Gender (Cl 15)	HAKU-	= it doesn't		
LOCATIVE CLASSES	HAPA-, HAKU- or HAM-	= it doesn't		

EXAMPLES :

Sijui	I don't know	(Class 1)
Hajui	He / she doesn't know	(Class 1)
Hamadi hajui	Hamadi (he) doesn't know	(Class 1)
Hawafanyi kazi	They don't work	(Class 2)

<u>Vibarua</u> hawafanyi kazi	The day laborers (they) don't work	(Class 8 -> 2)
<u>Hawasomi</u>	They don't study	(Class 2)
<u>Wanafunzi</u> hawasomi	The students (they) don't study	(Class 2)
<u>Hakuna</u> kazi	There is no work	(Locative Class)
<u>Hamna</u> shida	There is no problem	(Locative Class)

3. THE AUTONOMOUS PERSONAL PRONOUNS :

MIMI	= I, me
WEWE	= you
YEYE	= he, she, him, her
SISI	= we, us
NINYI	= you (Plur)
WAO	= they, them

With ordinary verbs, the autonomous personal pronoun reinforces the subject prefix, without replacing it. Thus :

<u>Yeye</u> anakwenda Dodoma	= Him, he goes to Dodoma
<u>Mimi</u> sisemi kiswahili	= Me, I don't speak Swahili

On the other hand, with the verb **KUWA** (= to be) in the present tense, the personal pronoun is essential to mark the person, since the verb is identical for all the persons :

<u>Mimi</u> ni mwalimu	= I am a teacher
<u>Wewe</u> ni mfarantsa	= You are French
<u>Yeye</u> ni mkenya	= He is Kenyan
<u>Sisi</u> ni wanafunzi	= We are pupils
<u>Ninyi</u> ni wageni	= You are the guests
<u>Wao</u> ni watanzania	= They are Tanzanians

It will be the same in the negative form, by replacing **NI** with **SI**. For example :

<u>Mimi</u> si mjinga	= I'm not an idiot
<u>Yeye</u> si mkulima	= He is not a farmer

4. A PARTICULAR PRONOUN : "-OTE" :

-OTE which means : "all" can be used as an independent pronoun, or accompany a noun. In all cases, it agrees in class with the name to which it refers. Because of its meaning, it is more frequently used in the plural than in the

singular.

GENDERS / Classes	SINGULAR	PLURAL
M-/WA- (CI 1 - 2)		WOTE
M-/MI- (CI 3 - 4)	WOTE	YOTE
JI-/MA- (CI 5 - 6)	LOTE	YOTE
KI-/VI- (CI 7 - 8)	CHOTE	VYOTE
N- (CI 9 - 10)	YOTE	ZOTE
U- (CI 11, 14 - 10)	WOTE	ZOTE

EXAMPLES :

Mwili <u>wote</u> waniuma	All the body hurts me
Lete visu <u>vyote</u>	Bring all the knives
Chakula <u>chote</u> kimeharibika	All the food is damaged
Watu <u>wote</u> wamefika	Everybody has arrived

We can also associate **-OTE** with personal pronouns or with numbers. For example :

Sisi <u>sote</u>	Us all / All of us
Ninyi <u>nyote</u>	You all / All of you
<u>Sote</u> wawili	Us two / Both of us
<u>Nyote</u> wawili	You two / Both of you
(Vitabu) <u>vyote</u> viwili	Both (books)
(Miti) <u>yote</u> mitatu	All three (trees)

VOCABULARY

Mfanyakazi (wa-)	a worker, workers	Msafiri (wa-)	a traveller, travellers
Mgiriki (wa-)	a Greek, Greeks	Mtanzania (wa-)	a Tanzanian, Tanzanians
Mjinga (wa-)	an idiot, idiots	Mwashi (wa-)	a mason, masons
Mkenya (wa-)	a Kenyan, Kenyans	Mwongo (wa-)	a liar, liars
Mlevi (wa-)	a drunkard, drunkards	Mzanzibari (wa-)	a Zanzibarian, Zanzibarians



Chapter 8 - The Present Definite Tense

The present definite tense in Swahili is primarily used to describe actions which take place at the time when one speaks. It is anchored in the present moment and has the same value as the PRESENT CONTINUOUS in English.

1. THE AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

The tense marker of the present definite is the infix **-NA-** which is placed between the affirmative subject prefix and the verb radical. The termination of the verb does not change.

SUBJECT PREFIX + NA + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

	NI-NA-FANYA	-> ninafanya	I am making
	U-NA-FANYA	-> unafanya	you are making
(Classe 1, Sing.)	A-NA-FANYA	-> anafanya	he / she is making
	TU-NA-FANYA	-> tunafanya	we are making
	M-NA-FANYA	-> mnafanya	you are making
(Classe 2, Plur.)	WA-NA-FANYA	-> wanafanya	they are making

NOTE :

Monosyllabic verbs keep the infinitive prefix **KU-** :

KUJA (= to come)	NI-NA-KU-JA	-> ninakuja	I am coming
KWENDA (= to go)	A-NA-KW-ENDA	-> anakwenda	he / she is going

2. THE NEGATIVE FORM :

There is not tense marker on the negative present definite. A negative subject prefix is directly followed by the verb radical. In case of a Bantu verb, its termination **-A** changes into **-I**. On the other hand, verbs of Arabic origin keep their final vowel without taking **-I**. As for monosyllabic verbs, they lose the infinitive prefix **KU-** but take the termination **-I**.

NEGATIVE SUBJECT PREFIX + VERB RADICAL + I

MODEL 1 (Verb of Bantu origin) : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

SI-FANY-I	-> sifanyi	I am not making
(HA+U) : HU-FANY-I	-> hufanyi	you are not making
(HA+A) : HA-FANY-I	-> hafanyi	he / she is not making
HA-TU-FANY-I	-> hatufanyi	we are not making
HA-M-FANY-I	-> hamfanyi	you are not making
HA-WA-FANY-I	-> hawafanyi	they are not making

MODEL 2 (Verb of Arabic origin) : **KUJIBU** = to answer

SI-JIBU	-> sijibu	I am not answering
(HA+U) : HU-JIBU	-> hujibu	you are not answering
(HA+A) : HA-JIBU	-> hajibu	he / she is not answering
HA-TU-JIBU	-> hatujibu	we are not answering
HA-M-JIBU	-> hamjibu	you are not answering
HA-WA-JIBU	-> hawajibu	they are not answering

MODEL 3 (Monosyllabic verbs) : **KUJA** = to come

SI-J-I	-> siji	I am not coming
(HA+U) : HU-J-I	-> huji	you are not coming
(HA+A) : HA-J-I	-> haji	he / she is not coming
HA-TU-J-I	-> hatuji	we are not coming
HA-M-J-I	-> hamji	you are not coming
HA-WA-J-I	-> hawaji	they are not coming

3. SOME SENTENCES IN THE PRESENT DEFINITE :

Mama anapika	Mother is cooking
Rafiki wanakuja leo	The friends are coming today
Watoto wanacheza mpira	The children are playing ball

Unapenda mpira ya miguu ?

Do you like football ?

Ninapenda mpira sana

I like football a lot

Hawaji leo

They are not coming today

Hatufanyi kazi

We are not working

VOCABULARY

Na	and, with	au	or
Lakini	but	Leo	today
Sasa	now	Tena	again
Kila	each, every	Sana	very, a lot

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. I love, I'm writing, I'm going out, you are breaking, she is crying, they are drawing, they are leaving, we are working, she is sweeping, you are cultivating (Plur), he is jumping, we are playing, you are cleaning, you are waiting (Plur), you are reading (Plur).
- b. The child is playing, the little child is crying, the men are eating, the women are cleaning, the teacher is working, the pupils are coming in, the driver is waiting, the youths are coming back, my parents are travelling, my children are reading, the father is working, the friends are coming back, the drunkard is drinking, the masons are working, the fisherman is coming back.
- c. I'm not playing, he is not drawing, we are not trying, you don't come, he doesn't stay, I don't know, you don't drink, she is not working, we are not going, you don't answer, they are not cooking, I am not travelling, you don't hear, he doesn't sleep, it doesn't fit.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

- a. **Anafika, unakuja, wanapiga, tunafurahi, mnasafiri, inafaa, wanajaribu, anabaki, ninabadili, tunasafisha, mnapika, unakaa, anafuata, tunangoja, ninanunua.**

- b. **Sijui, sifikiri, sisemi, hujui, hujibu, husomi, hasikii, harudi, hasafiri, hatuingii, hatufaulu, hamwendi, hawali, hawanyi, hawafanyi.**

EXERCISE 3 : Translate into English :

1. **Wewe ni mtanzania.**
2. **Unasema kiswahili.**
3. **Lakini husemi kiingereza.**
4. **Mtoto anapenda kucheza sana.**
5. **Baba na mama wanasafiri leo.**
6. **Mwanafunzi anajaribu kusoma.**
7. **Vibarua hawafanyi kazi leo.**
8. **Wazazi wangu wanakaa Zanzibar.**
9. **Jaribu kusema kiswahili !**
10. **Mimi ni mwingereza. Sijui kiswahili sana.**

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 9 - The M-/MI- Gender

The **M-/MI-** gender (Classes 3 / 4) is not as specific as the **M-/WA-** gender.

It includes primarily nouns of trees, objects, parts of the human body, elements of nature, etc..

But it doesn't contain any nouns of human beings.



Cl 3 (Singular) :

prefix **M-**

MTI = a tree, the tree

Cl 4 (Plural) :

prefix **MI-**

MITI = trees, the trees

In front of **a, e, i**

the singular prefix **M-** becomes **MW-** :

MWILI = a body, the body

NOTE :

In the singular, nothing distinguishes a noun belonging to the **M-/MI-** gender from a noun of the **M-/WA-** gender, therefore the question is to guess whether its plural should either be in **WA-** or in **MI-**. The only way to solve the problem is to know that noun : if it represents a person, its plural is in **WA-**, whereas if it is not a person, its plural is in **MI-**...

1. SOME NOUNS OF THE M-/MI- GENDER (Classes 3 / 4) :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Mbuyu	mibuyu	a baobab tree, baobab trees
Mchele	michele	husked rice
Mchezo	michezo	a game, games
Mchungwa	michungwa	an orange tree, orange trees
Mdomo	midomo	a lip, a beak, a mouth, lips
Mfano	mifano	an example, examples
Mfereji	mifereji	a ditch, a water tap, ditches
Mfuko	mifuko	a pocket, a bag, pockets
Mgomba	migomba	a banana tree, banana trees

Mguu	miguu	a foot, a leg, feet
Mji	miji	a town, towns
Mkate	mikate	a bread, breads
Mkono	mikono	a hand, an arm, hands
Mlango	milango	a door, doors
Mlima	milima	a mountain, a hill, mountains
Mnara	minara	a minaret, a lighthouse, a tower, minarets
Mnazi	minazi	a coconut tree, coconut trees
Moshi	mioshi	a smoke, smokes
Moto	mioto	a fire, fires
Moyo	mioyo	a heart, hearts
Mpira	mipira	a ball, a pipe, balls
Mshahara	mishahara	a salary, wages
Msikiti	misikiti	a mosque, mosques
Msitu	misitu	a forest, forests
Mswaki	miswaki	a toothbrush, toothbrushes
Mti	miti	a tree, trees
Mtihani	mitihani	an exam, exams
Mto	mito	a river, a pillow, rivers
Mzigo	mizigo	a luggage, a load, loads

The radical starts with a vowel : Singular prefix **Mw-** :

Mwaka	miaka	a year, years
Mwavuli	miavuli	an umbrella, umbrellas
Mwembe	miembe	a mango tree, mango trees
Mwezi	miezi	a month, months
Mwiba	miiba	a thorn, a thorn-bush, thorns
Mwili	miili	a body, bodies
Mwisho	miisho	the end, the ends

Particular cases : Singular prefix **Mu-** :

Muhindi	mihindi	corn, maize
Muhogo	mihogo	cassava
Muwa	miwa	sugar cane

However, many nouns referring to natural elements, to parts of the human body, and to plants, are not included in this gender.

2. CLASS AGREEMENTS :

1. Adjective : The adjective takes prefixes of class agreements identical to those of the noun : (See : [Chapter 11 - Concordant Adjectives](#).)

<u>Class 3 :</u>	Mti	mkubwa / mdogo / mzuri / mrefu / mweusi / ...	
	a	big / small / beautiful / high / dark / ...	tree
<u>Class 4 :</u>	Miti	mikubwa / midogo / mizuri / mirefu / myeusi / ...	
		big / small / beautiful / high / dark / ...	trees

2. Possessive adjectives :

<u>Class 3 :</u>	Mti	wangu / wako / wake / wetu / wenu / wao	
	=	my / your / his - her - its / our / your / their	tree
<u>Class 4 :</u>	Miti	yangu / yako / yake / yetu / yenu / yao	
	=	my / your / his - her - its / our / your / their	trees



Abiria chungu MZIGO YAKO..
MARADHI - UMASIKINI - UJINGA - NJAA

Traveller look after YOUR LUGGAGE..
DISEASE - POVERTY - IDIOCY - HUNGER

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

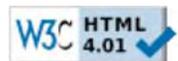
- a. A river, a mountain, a forest, a tree, a baobab tree, a mango tree, a coconut tree, a thorn-bush, an orange tree, a banana tree, cassava, corn, sugar cane, the smoke, a fire.
- b. Breads, balls, tooth-brushes, bags, games, months, years, wages, towns, the hands, the doors, hearts, exams, coconut trees, umbrellas.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

- a. Mikono, miguu, mifereji, mwembe, mnazi, mibuyu, mchungwa, milima, mito, miti, muwa, mifuko, mchele, mchezo, miavuli, midomo, mizigo, msikiti, minara, mtihani.
- b. Cheza mpira ! Angalia mtoto mdogo ! Faulu mtihani ! Chora moyo ! Lima muhindi ! Funga mlango ! Usifunga mlango ! Angalia miiba ! Nunua mkate ! Usile mkate !

EXERCISE 3 : Translate into English :

1. Watoto wanapenda kucheza mpira.
2. Mkulima analima michungwa na migomba.
3. Mtoto mdogo anapenda kula muwa.
4. Baba anafunga mlango.
5. Nenda ununue mkate na mchele.
6. Wanafunzi wanaandika mitihani yao.
7. Watoto wanaangalia moto.
8. Mnalima muhindi au muhogo ?
9. Vibarua wanapata mishahara yao leo.
10. Kipofu hawezi kuona mfereji.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 10 - The Present Indefinite Tense

This tense is used to describe usual or permanent actions, or to state "scientific" truths, that are not necessarily connected to the present time.

This tense is equivalent to the SIMPLE PRESENT in English.

1. THE AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

The tense marker of the Present Indefinite is the infix **-A-** which is inserted between the affirmative subject prefix and the verb radical. Monosyllabic verbs lose the infinitive prefix **KU-** in the Present Indefinite, unlike in the Present Definite.

SUBJECT PREFIX + A + VERB RADICAL

MODEL 1 : KUSOMA = to read

NI-A-SOMA	-> nasoma	I read
U-A-SOMA	-> wasoma	you read
A-A-SOMA	-> asoma	he / she reads
TU-A-SOMA	-> twasoma	we read
MU-A-SOMA	-> mwasoma	you read
WA-A-SOMA	-> wasoma	they read

MODEL 2 : KUJA = to come

NI-A-JA	-> naja	I come
U-A-JA	-> waja	you come
A-A-JA	-> aja	he / she comes
TU-A-JA	-> twaja	we come
MU-A-JA	-> mwaja	you come
WA-A-JA	-> waja	they come

NOTE :

The verb **KUWA** (= to be) does not conjugate in the Present Indefinite. It has only one present tense form : **NI**. (See : [Chapter 7](#) and [Chapter 17 - The Verb KUWA.](#))

2. THE NEGATIVE FORM :

The Present Indefinite Tense has no specific negative conjugation : we use the negative form of the Present Definite.

(See : [Chapter 8 - The Present Definite Tense](#))

3. SOME SENTENCES IN THE PRESENT INDEFINITE :

Wafanya kazi gani ?	What work do you do ?
Nafundisha kifarantsa	I teach French
Mama apika kila siku	Mother cooks everyday
Wanadamu walala usiku	Human beings sleep at night
Ng'ombe wala majani	Cows eat grass
Wanyama waogopa moto	Animals are afraid of the fire
Sisi ni watanzania	We are Tanzanians
Kipofu haoni kitu	The blind man doesn't see anything
Mgonjwa hali, hanywi, alala tu	The patient doesn't eat, doesn't drink, he sleeps only
Sijui kiswahili	I don't know Swahili

VOCABULARY

Ku-chafua	to dirty	Ku-piga pasi	to iron
Ku-ficha	to hide	Ku-shona	to sew
Ku-fua nguo	to wash the linen	Ku-tazama	to stare
Ku-ogopa	to be afraid	Ku-tia	to put
Ku-omba	to ask, to beg	Ku-toa	to remove
Ku-panda	to go up, to climb	Ku-uliza	to ask a question

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili, using the Present Indefinite :

- a. I learn, you sew, she sweeps, she cooks, they wash the linen, they cultivate, he removes, you listen (Plur), they agree, he buys, they sell, they play, she sleeps, we exchange, we are afraid.
- b. I don't read, I don't take, he doesn't make, he doesn't stop, he doesn't leave, I don't speak, they don't play, they don't ask, you don't sweep, I don't iron, they don't listen, he doesn't agree, they are not afraid, they don't climb, you don't cultivate (Plur).
- c. The old man doesn't work, the fishermen do not cultivate, he doesn't cultivate cassava, the youths do not agree, the cow eats grass, the women wash the linen, you are afraid of the fire (Plur), the men cut the trees, you cultivate maize (plur), the child doesn't like to wash the linen, mother likes sewing, the blind man begs for bread.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Wafanya kazi gani ?
2. Mimi ni mwalimu.
3. Sisi ni wanafunzi watanzania.
4. Ng'ombe wapenda kula majani.
5. Dada afagia kila asubuhi.
6. Vijana wacheza mpira kila jioni.
7. Kibarua apata mshahara wake kila siku.
8. Mtoto mdogo hapendi muhogo.
9. Nanunua mkate kila siku.
10. Wawe waogopa mwalimu wako.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 11 - Concordant Adjectives

"True" adjectives are relatively few in Swahili, but it will be seen later that there are several ways of making adjectival concept words. (See : [Chapter 44](#).)

In Swahili, unlike in English, the adjective is always placed AFTER the noun it qualifies.

We distinguish two main categories of adjectives :

1. Those which take a class prefix to agree with the noun they qualify.
2. Those which remain invariable : they are in their majority loanwords from Arabic.

We will devote this first chapter to the study of the adjectives which agree : the concordant adjectives.

The adjectives are usually introduced without any prefix in the lists of vocabulary. It is therefore advisable to be able to recognize them from their roots.

The agreement prefixes of the adjectives are identical to the class prefixes of the nouns with which they agree.

However, a few modifications of a phonetic nature can be observed, especially with the adjectives whose root starts with a vowel. Therefore, for more transparency, we propose to divide our study of the concordant adjectives into two sub-categories : the adjectives whose root starts with a consonant and those whose root starts with a vowel.

1. ADJECTIVES STARTING WITH A CONSONANT :

ADJECTIVE	TRANSLATION	ADJECTIVE	TRANSLATION
-baya	bad	-kuu	chief, main
-bichi	raw, green, unripe	-kuukuu	used, old
-bivu	ripe	-nene	fat
-bovu	rotten	-nono	big, fat (animal)
-chache	a few, some	-pana	large
-chafu	dirty	-pya	new
-chungu	bitter	-refu	long, high
-dogo	small, little	-shupavu	brave, firm
-fupi	short	-tamu	delicious, sweet
-geni	strange, foreign	-tupu	empty, naked
-gumu	hard	-vivu	lazy
-janja	cunning, crafty	-wivu	jealous
-kali	severe, sharp, cruel	-zee	old
-kavu	dry	-zima	whole, adult
-ke	female	-zito	heavy

-korofi	savage, brutal	-zuri	pretty, beautiful
-kubwa	big		

The prefix agreements for the **M-/WA-** gender (Classes 1 / 2), the **M-/MI-** gender (Classes 3 / 4) and the **KI-/VI-** gender (Classes 7 / 8) are strictly identical to those of the nouns. For the **JI-/MA-** gender (Classes 5 / 6), only the adjective **-PYA** takes the prefix **JI-** in the singular, which makes : **JIPYA**. The other adjectives do not take any prefix in the singular. They all take the prefix **MA-** in the plural.

It is only with the **N-** gender (Classes 9 / 10), that matters get a little more tricky :

1. The adjective takes the prefix **N-** if the adjectival root starts with **D, G** ou **Z** :

N-	-DOGO	-> NDOGO	(= small, little)
N-	-GUMU	-> NGUMU	(= hard)
N-	-ZURI	-> NZURI	(= beautiful, nice)

2. The adjective takes the prefix **M-** if the adjectival root starts with **B, P** ou **V** :

M-	-BAYA	-> MBAYA	(= bad)
M-	-PYA	-> MPYA	(= new)
M-	-VIVU	-> MVIVU	(= lazy)

3. The adjectives whose roots start with other consonants do not take any prefix, except for **-REFU** which makes : **NDEFU** (= long, high).

SOME EXAMPLES :

Mtoto mdogo	a little child	(Class 1)
Watoto wadogo	little children	(Class 2)
Mti mrefu	a high tree	(Class 3)
Miti mirefu	high trees	(Class 4)
Tunda jipya	a new fruit	(Class 5)
Matunda mapya	new fruits	(Class 6)
Chakula kibaya	a bad food	(Class 7)
Vyakula vibaya	bad foods	(Class 8)
Nguo fupi	a short cloth	(Class 9)
Nguo fupi	short clothes	(Class 10)
Uso mzuri	a beautiful face	(U- Gender, Sing, Adj CI 3)
Nyuso nzuri	beautiful faces	(U- Gender, Plur, Adj CI 10)
Kusoma kuzuri	studying is good	(KU- Gender)

2. ADJECTIVES STARTING WITH A VOWEL :

-aminifu	honest, faithful
-angavu	bright
-ekundu	red
-ema	good, nice
-embamba	thin
-epesi	light, easy
-erevu	malignant, cunning
-eupe	white, clear
-eusi	black, dark
-ingi	much, many, a lot
-ingine	other, another
-ovu	bad
-ume	male

The presence of a vowel at the beginning of the adjectival root leads to modifications of a phonetic nature. Let's examine those changes, gender after gender :

1. The M-/WA- Gender :

		<u>SINGULAR</u> (Class 1)	
M(u) + A	-> MWA	Ex : Mtu mwaminifu	An honest person
M(u) + E	-> MWE	Ex : Mtoto mwema	A nice child
M(u) + I	-> MWI	Ex : Mtoto mwingine	Another child
		<u>PLURAL</u> (Class 2)	
WA + A	-> WA	Ex : Watu waminifu	Honest people
WA + E	-> WE	Ex : Watoto wema	Nice children
WA + I	-> WE	Ex : Watoto wengine	Other children

2. The M-/MI- Gender :

		<u>SINGULAR</u> (Class 3)	
M(u) + E	-> MWE	Ex : Mti mweusi	A dark tree
M(u) + I	-> MWI	Ex : Mkate mwingine	Another bread
		<u>PLURAL</u> (Class 4)	
MI + E	-> MYE	Ex : Miti myeusi	Dark trees
MI + I	-> MI	Ex : Mikate mingine	Other breads

3. The **JI-MA-** Gender :

		<u>SINGULAR</u> (Class 5)	
JI + E	-> JE	Ex : Jua jekundu	A red sun
JI + I	-> JI	Ex : Jua jingi	A lot of sun
		<u>PLURAL</u> (Class 6)	
MA + E	-> ME	Ex : Mabasi mekundu	Red buses
MA + I	-> MI	Ex : Mabasi mingine	Other buses

EXCEPTION : **JI + INGINE** -> **LINGINE** (= another)

4. The **KI-VI-** Gender :

		<u>SINGULAR</u> (Class 7)	
KI + E	-> CHE	Ex : Kiti cheusi	A black chair
KI + I	-> KI	Ex : Chakula kingi	A lot of food
		<u>PLURAL</u> (Class 8)	
VI + E	-> VY	Ex : Viti vyeusi	Black chairs
VI + I	-> VI	Ex : Vyakula vingine	Other foods

5. The **N-** Gender :

		<u>SINGULAR</u> (Class 9)	
N + E	-> NYE	Ex : Nguo nyeupe	A white cloth
N + I	-> NYI	Ex : Nguo Nyingine	Another cloth
		<u>PLURAL</u> (Class 10)	
N + E	-> NYE	Ex : Nguo nyeupe	White clothes
N + I	-> NYI	Ex : Nguo Nyingine	Other clothes

EXCEPTION : **N + EMA** -> **NJEMA** (= good)

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

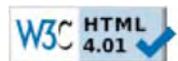
- a. Big, fat, small, short, heavy, light, dirty, hard, sweet, bitter, new, lazy, red, black, white, malignant, main, raw, bad, good.
- b. A cunning man, an honest child, a few people, a severe teacher, a lazy young man, a jealous woman, a nice young girl, adult people, a high mountain, sweet sugar cane, beautiful maize, a thin body, dirty hands, a whole month, a black umbrella, long legs, a white smoke, a red fire, a difficult exam, a good heart.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

- a. **Mfupi, nzito, mvivu, kavu, kigumu, kidogo, machafu, mbichi, mkali, jipya, makubwa, nzuri, njema, lengine, mzee, nyekundu, waminifu, mwangavu, chepesi, tupu.**
- b. **Mtoto mvivu, mfuko mtupu, watu wazima, wanyama wakali, wamasai wakubwa, nguo mpya, mtu mweusi, mji mkuu, miguu mifupi, wazungu wageni, mikono mipana, mpira mdogo, magari machache, kitu kingine, chakula kitamu, muhindi mbichi, mtoto mbaya, wanafunzi wengi, mwizi mwovu, nguo fupi.**

EXERCISE 3 : Put the following phrases in the plural :

Gari jipya, nguo nyekundu, kiti kidogo, uso mwema, mwanamke mkali, mto mpana, mti mrefu, mtu mzima, mvulana mvivu, mnyama mnono, mji mkubwa, mgonjwa mwingine, mlango mkuu, mshahara mdogo, mkate mwingi, moyo mzito, msitu mweusi, mkono mchafu, gari bovu, chakula kichache.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 12 - Invariable Adjectives

Most of the invariable adjectives are borrowed from the Arabic. Like the concordant adjectives, they are always placed AFTER the noun. A few of them can be both noun and adjective. For example : **maskini** = poor, a poor, and **tajiri (ma-)** = rich, a rich person.

1. THE MOST COMMON INVARIABLE ADJECTIVES :

ADJECTIVE	TRANSLATION	ADJECTIVE	TRANSLATION
bora	excellent, better	manjano	yellow
bure	useless, free	maskini	poor
ghali	expensive	muhimu	important
haba	few, little	ovyo	bad, valueless
hafifu	weak	rahisi	cheap, easy
hai	alive	rasmi	official
halali	pure, legitimate	safi	clean
haramu	forbidden	sahihi	correct
hodari	brave, intelligent, clever	sawa	equal, same
imara	strong	shwari	calm
kamili	complete, exact	tajiri	rich
kijani	green	tayari	ready
kweli	true	tele	plenty
laini	soft, smooth	wazi	open, obvious
maalum	special		

2. SOME EXAMPLES :

Bwana tajiri	A rich man
Mtoto maskini	A poor child
Kazi bure / ovyo	A useless / slapdash piece of work
Safari rasmi	An official journey
Wanafunzi hodari	Clever pupils
Mambo muhimu	Important matters
Chakula ni haba	There is little food

Chakula ni tele	There is plenty of food
Chakula tayari	The food (is) ready
Mlango ni wazi	The door is open
Kila kitu sawa	Everything is equal / fine
Habari gani ? - Safi sana !	How are you ? - Very fine !
Habari za kazi ? - Shwari !	What about your work ? - It's O.K. !

3. THE COMPARATIVE OF SUPERIORITY :

To translate "more than" we use in Swahili the expression **KULIKO** (= where there is), or alternatively **KUZIDI** (= to increase), **KUPITA** (= to overtake), or **KUSHINDA** (= to defeat). All these different expressions are equivalent and interchangeable.

EXAMPLES :

Ali ni mrefu kuliko Juma

Ali is taller than Juma (*Ali is tall more than Juma*)

Nguo yangu ni safi kupita yako

My cloth is cleaner than yours (*... is clean more than yours*)

Abdallah ni hodari kushinda Omari

Abdallah is more intelligent than Omari (*... is intelligent more than Omari*)

Zanzibar ni mji mzuri kuzidi Dar es Salaam

Zanzibar is a more beautiful town than Dar es Salaam (*... is a town beautiful more than Dar es Salaam*)

SAYING :

Damu nzito kuliko maji

VOCABULARY

Ku-amka	to wake up	Ku-nuka	to smell bad
Ku-anza	to start, to begin	Ku-nukia	to smell good
Ku-futa	to wipe	Ku-ota	to grow, to dream
Ku-gonga	to hit, to knock	Ku-sahau	to forget

Ku-hitaji to need
Ku-lipa to pay

Ku-tosha to be sufficient
Ku-vaa to wear

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

A poor child, rich travellers, an expensive car, a useless piece of work, an important job, an open door, forbidden games, a clever pupil, an official journey, a clean river, a weak patient, a ready luggage, an easy job, important matters, forbidden food, cheap bread, plenty of food, better food, complete matters, clean clothes.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

Shwari, sawa, laini, kweli, haramu, halali, bora, bure, tayari, tajiri, maskini, ghali, rahisi, imara, hafifu, rasmi, tele, haba, wazi, muhimu, ovyo, manjano, kijani, hai, hodari.

EXERCISE 3 : Translate into English :

1. Mizigo yako (ni) tayari.
2. Mwalimu anaanza safari rasmi.
3. Kipofu mzee anaomba mkate.
4. Yeye ni maskini. Hawezi kulipa.
5. Anavaa nguo safi.
6. Usifanye kazi bure !
7. Hamisi ni mwanafunzi hodari.
8. Chakula (ni) tayari. Karibu chakula !
9. Kila siku (ni) sawa.
10. Chakula ni haba. Hakitoshi.
11. Tunahitaji mikate mengine.
12. Amina ni msichana mwema kuliko Fatuma.
13. Nairobi ni mji mkubwa kupita Dar es Salaam.
14. Mkate wako ni bora kuliko wangu.
15. Habari za kazi ? - Shwari !



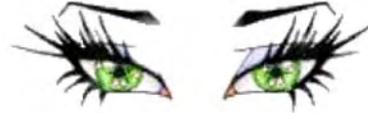
Chapter 13 - The **JI-/MA-** Gender

The **JI-/MA-** gender (Classes 5 / 6) includes nouns of persons, nouns of manufactured objects, of parts of the human body, of fruits and natural products, nouns of built or natural places, abstract concepts, etc..

They are often loanwords, particularly of Arabic origin.

This gender is very particular, for although it is named "**JI-/MA-**", only a very small number of nouns take the prefix **JI-** in the singular.

The majority of the nouns of class 5 (singular) do not have a prefix, while some other nouns only exist in class 6 (plural).



Cl 5 (Singular) :

prefix **JI-**

prefix **Ø-**

JICHO = an eye, the eye

TUNDA = a fruit, the fruit

Cl 6 (Plural) :

prefix **MA-**

MACHO = eyes, the eyes

MATUNDA = fruits, the fruits

1. NOUNS TAKING THE PREFIX **JI-** IN THE SINGULAR :

NOUN	TRANSLATION	NOUN	TRANSLATION
Jicho, macho	an eye, eyes	Jambo, mambo	a matter, matters
Jiko, meko	a cooker, cookers	Jiwe, mawe	a stone, stones
Jino, meno	a tooth, teeth		

2. NOUNS WHICH EXIST ONLY IN THE PLURAL :

NOUN	TRANSLATION	NOUN	TRANSLATION
Maafa	a misfortune	Majivu	ashes
Mafuta	oil	Matata	problems
Mahindi	corn (on the cob)	Matusi	insults

Majani
Maji

grass
water

Mavi
Maziwa

excrement
milk



3. OTHER NOUNS GROUPED BY TOPICS :

1. MANUFACTURED OBJECTS :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Blanketi	mablanketi	a blanket, blankets
Debe	madebe	a 4 gallon tin can
Dirisha	madirisha	a window, windows
Gari	magari	a car, cars (also in classes 9 / 10)
Gazeti	magazeti	a newspaper, newspapers
Godoro	magodoro	a mattress, mattresses
Gunia	magunia	a coarse bag, a sack
Jembe	majembe	a hoe, hoes
Sanduku	masanduku	a box, a trunk, boxes
Shoka	mashoka	an axe, axes

2. FRUITS, NATURAL PRODUCTS :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Chungwa	machungwa	an orange, oranges
Dafu	madafu	a coconut with milk, coconuts
Embe	maembe	a mango, mangoes
Jani	majani	a leaf, leaves
Limau	malimau	a lemon, lemons
Nanasi	mananasi	a pineapple, pineapples

Papai	mapapai	a pawpaw, pawpaws
Tunda	matunda	a fruit, fruits
Yai	mayai	an egg, eggs

3. NATURAL OR BUILT PLACES :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Baraza	mabaraza	a veranda, verandas
Daraja	madaraja	a bridge, bridges
Duka	maduka	a shop, shops
Pori	mapori	the bush
Shamba	mashamba	a field, a farm, fields
Soko	masoko	a market, markets

4. NOUNS OF PEOPLE :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Bibi	mabibi	young lady, grandmother, ladies
Bwana	mabwana	Sir, master, gentlemen
Fundi	mafundi	a craftsman, craftsmen
Karani	makarani	a clerk, clerks
Rais	marais	a president, presidents
Seremala	maseremala	a carpenter, carpenters
Shangazi	mashangazi	an aunt (paternal), aunts
Tajiri	matajiri	a rich person, rich people
Waziri	mawaziri	a minister, ministers

5. PARTS OF THE HUMAN BODY :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Bega	mabega	a shoulder, shoulders
Goti	magoti	a knee, knees
Sikio	masikio	an ear, ears
Tumbo	matumbo	the stomach, the bowells

6. ABSTRACT OR CONCRETE CONCEPTS :

= my / your / his - her / our / your / their fruit

Class 6 : **Matunda** **yangu / yako / yake / yetu / yenu / yao**
 = my / your / his - her / our / your / their fruits

NOTE : The adjective that qualifies a class 5 / 6 noun of person, must take class 1 / 2 agreements.

Karani mzuri (instead of karani zuri)	A good clerk
Makarani wazuri (instead of makarani mazuri)	Good clerks
Yule bwana mkubwa	That big man
Wale mabwana wakubwa	Those big men

VOCABULARY

To translate : "in, on, at" : the suffix "-NI"

Barazani	on the veranda	Mlangoni	at the door
Dukani	in the shop	Mlimani	on the mountain
Jikoni	in the kitchen	Mtoni	in the river
Mfukoni	in the bag	Porini	in the bush
Mkononi	in the hand	Shambani	on the farm
Mjini	downtown	Sokoni	at the market

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. Corn, oil, water, mangoes, lemons, eggs, oranges, pawpaws, milk, a can, a coarse bag, a hoe, newspapers, an axe, cars, a shop, a market, craftsmen, ministers, clerks.
- b. I drink water, I eat corn, he takes a pawpaw, he sells oil, buy oranges ! Take blankets ! Don't forget the newspaper ! Drink your milk ! They work on the farm, they play on the veranda, she eats in the kitchen, mind the large snake ! Cook some eggs ! Cut the pineapple ! Tell your name !

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

- a. Rais, shangazi, makarani, magoti, tumbo, masikio, maneno, mawazo, sokoni, shambani, porini, majani, blanketi, dirisha, jembe, jicho, jino, jina, jikoni, makosa.
- b. Waziri mkuu, maziwa mazuri, godoro jipya, blanketi manjano, daraja refu, jua kali, mazungumzo marefu, mapapai madogo, limau bovu, mayai machache, mahindi tele, matusi ovyo, bibi mkali, fundi hodari, baraza kubwa, shauri lako, jina langu, mawazo yangu, joka mrefu, machungwa mabichi.

EXERCISE 3 : Translate into English :

1. Nenda dukani ununue maziwa !
2. Mama anakwenda jikoni kupika chakula.
3. Watoto wapenda kula maembe mabichi.
4. Maseremala wanafanya kazi barazani.
5. Leo sokoni, machungwa ni ghali kuliko maembe.
6. Ninahitaji blanketi safi na godoro jipya.
7. Mama wanauza mayai na mafuta sokoni.
8. "Bibi Majivu" afanya kazi chafu tele.
9. Mkunywani maji safi tu, msinywe maji machafu !
10. Naogopa joka kali porini !

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 14 - The Past Perfect Tense

We use the PAST PERFECT to speak of specific actions that have already taken place (for example : I have eaten, I have understood, I have been, etc...), or to describe a state (for example : he is sitting, he is dead, he is sleeping, etc...). It is usually translated by a Present Perfect in English.

1. THE PAST PERFECT - AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

The marker of the Past Perfect is the infix **-ME-** placed between the subject prefix and the verbal root :

SUBJECT PREFIX + ME + VERB RADICAL

MODEL 1 : KUFANYA = to do

NI-ME-FANYA	-> nimefanya	I have done
U-ME-FANYA	-> umefanya	you have done
A-ME-FANYA	-> amefanya	he / she has done
TU-ME-FANYA	-> tumefanya	we have done
M-ME-FANYA	-> mmefanya	you have done
WA-ME-FANYA	-> wamefanya	they have done

NOTE :

The verbs of Arabic origin behave exactly like the verbs of Bantu origin ; while the monosyllabic verbs, keep the **KU-** of the infinitive.

MODEL 2 : KWENDA = to go

NI-ME-KWENDA	-> nimekwenda	I have gone / been
U-ME-KWENDA	-> umekwenda	you have gone / been
A-ME-KWENDA	-> amekwenda	he / she has gone / been
TU-ME-KWENDA	-> tumekwenda	we have gone / been
M-ME-KWENDA	-> mmekwenda	you have gone / been
WA-ME-KWENDA	-> wamekwenda	they have gone / been

REINFORCEMENT :

To insist on the fact that the action already took place, we can insert the verbal root **sha** (from the verb **kwisha** = to finish) between the tense marker of the past perfect and the verb radical.

EXAMPLES :

Nimesh akwenda Tanzania.	I have <u>already</u> been to Tanzania.
Wamesh afanya mtihani wao.	They have <u>already</u> done their exam.

2. THE PAST PERFECT - NEGATIVE FORM :

The negative form of the Past Perfect describes a situation which has not yet taken place, or a state which has not been carried out yet.

The marker of the Present Perfect negative is the infix **-JA-** placed between the negative subject prefix and the verbal root.

NEGATIVE SUBJECT PREFIX + JA + VERB RADICAL

MODEL 1 : KUFANYA = to do

SI-JA-FANYA	-> sijafanya	I haven't done
HU-JA-FANYA	-> hujafanya	you haven't done
HA-JA-FANYA	-> hajafanya	he / she hasn't done
HATU-JA-FANYA	-> hatujafanya	we haven't done
HAM-JA-FANYA	-> hamjafanya	you haven't done
HAWA-JA-FANYA	-> hawajafanya	they haven't done

NOTE : Contrary to what occurs in the Past Perfect affirmative, the monosyllabic verbs lose the **KU-** of the infinitive in the negative form.

MODEL 2 : KWENDA = to go

SI-JA-ENDA	-> sijaenda	I haven't gone / been yet
HU-JA-ENDA	-> hujaenda	You haven't gone / been yet
HA-JA-ENDA	-> hajaenda	He / she hasn't gone / been yet
HATU-JA-ENDA	-> hatujaenda	We haven't gone / been yet
HAM-JA-ENDA	-> hamjaenda	You haven't gone / been yet
HAWA-JA-ENDA	-> hawajaenda	they haven't gone / been yet

REINFORCEMENT :

To insist on the fact that the action hasn't taken place yet, we can use the word **bado**, which will be placed before or after the verb in the Past Perfect negative.

EXAMPLES :

Amina amerudi ? - Ajarudi bado. or : **Bado !**
= Has Amina come back ? - She hasn't come back yet.

Umeshakula ? - Sijala bado.
= Have you already eaten ? - I haven't eaten yet.

Bado hatujapanda mlima wa Kilimanjaro
= We have not yet climbed on Mount Kilimanjaro.

VOCABULARY

Ku-acha	to leave, to abandon	Ku-maliza	to finish
Ku-chelewa	to be late	ku-ondoka	to leave, to go away
Ku-choka	to be tired	Ku-pona	to get better
Ku-iba	to steal	Ku-potea	to lose
Ku-iva	to ripen, to be cooked	Ku-vuna	to reap, to harvest
Ku-kosa	to miss, to be mistaken	Ku-zoea	to be accustomed

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. I am cured, he is sitting, he has gone, they have come, you are accustomed, he is lost, she has arrived, you have come back, we have stayed, I am tired, you have fallen, she has cleaned, we have finished, he is dead, he has stopped, you have said, it's finished (CI 9), he has damaged, you are mistaken, we are late.
- b. He hasn't arrived yet, I haven't seen yet, he hasn't gone yet, I'm not cured yet, they are not yet ripe (CI 6), I am not accustomed yet, she hasn't swept yet, they haven't stolen yet, you haven't done yet, you haven't been yet.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Watoto wameamka asubuhi.
2. Dudu ameingia jikoni.
3. Sijanunua mkate leo.
4. Mwizi ameiba mahindi shambani usiku.
5. Bado sijapata mshahara wangu.
6. Mgonjwa amelala, ajapona bado.
7. Wazazi wangu wameketi barazani.
8. Chakula tayari ? Wageni hawajala !
9. Mama amekwisha pika chakula asubuhi.
10. Sijui kiswahili sana. Sijaenda Tanzania bado.
11. Mmekwenda Zanzibar ? - Ndiyo !
12. Lakini hatujapanda mlima wa Kilimanjaro.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 15 - The Demonstratives

There is no distinction between demonstrative adjectives and demonstrative pronouns in Swahili.

The demonstrative must agree with the noun to which it refers, but it doesn't take the same prefixes as the noun. Its prefixes (or suffixes) of agreement are of pronominal type.

1. THREE CATEGORIES OF DEMONSTRATIVES :

There are three kinds of demonstratives in Swahili :

1. THE DEMONSTRATIVE OF PROXIMITY :

It corresponds to : this, these, for the demonstrative adjectives ;
and to : this one, these ones, for the demonstrative pronouns.

FORMATION : It starts with **H-** and ends in the subject prefix corresponding to the class of the noun with which it agrees. The intermediate vowel is identical to the final vowel.

EXAMPLES :

MTU	(Class 1)	Subject prefix YU- (NOT A-)	H.. - YU -> HUYU
WATU	(Class 2)	Subject prefix WA-	H.. - WA -> HAWA
MTI	(Class 3)	Subject prefix U-	H.. - U -> HUU
MITI	(Class 4)	Subject prefix I-	H.. - I -> HII
TUNDA	(Class 5)	Subject prefix LI-	H.. - LI -> HILI
MATUNDA	(Class 6)	Subject prefix YA-	H.. - YA -> HAYA

2. THE DEMONSTRATIVE OF DISTANCE :

It corresponds to : that, those, for the demonstrative adjectives ;
or to : that one, those ones, for the demonstrative pronouns.

FORMATION : It starts with the subject prefix corresponding to the class of the noun with which it agrees, and ends in **-LE**.

EXAMPLES :

MTU	(Class 1)	Subject prefix YU- (NOT A-)	YU - LE -> YULE
WATU	(Class 2)	Subject prefix WA-	WA - LE -> WALE
MTI	(Class 3)	Subject prefix U-	U - LE -> ULE
MITI	(Class 4)	Subject prefix I-	I - LE -> ILE
TUNDA	(Class 5)	Subject prefix LI-	LI - LE -> LILE

MATUNDA (Class 6) Subject prefix **YA-** **YA - LE -> YALE**

3. THE DEMONSTRATIVE OF REFERENCE :

It is used to designate the person or the thing which has already been spoken about. It can be translated by :
this, that ;
Or by : this one, that one.

FORMATION : It borrows its first syllable from the demonstrative of proximity, and ends in the suffix **"-O"** of reference corresponding to the class of the noun with which it agrees.
(See : [Chapter 31](#).)

EXAMPLES :

MTU	(Class 1)	"-O" of reference -YO	HU - YO -> HUYO
WATU	(Class 2)	"-O" of reference -O	HA - O -> HAO
MTI	(Class 3)	"-O" of reference -O	HU - O -> HUO
MITI	(Class 4)	"-O" of reference -YO	HI - YO -> HIYO
TUNDA	(Class 5)	"-O" of reference -LO	HI - LO -> HILO
MATUNDA	(Class 6)	"-O" of reference -YO	HA - YO -> HAYO

TABLE OF DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES / PRONOUNS :

CLASSES / NOUNS	DEMONSTRATIVES		
	PROXIMITY	DISTANCE	REFERENCE
Class 1 Mtu	HUYU	YULE	HUYO
Class 2 Watu	HAWA	WALE	HAO
Class 3 Mti	HUU	ULE	HUO
Class 4 Miti	HII	ILE	HIYO
Class 5 Tunda	HILI	LILE	HILO
Class 6 Matunda	HAYA	YALE	HAYO
Class 7 Kiti	HIKI	KILE	HICHO
Class 8 Viti	HIVI	VILE	HIVYO
Class 9 Nguo	HII	ILE	HIYO
Class 10 Nguo	HIZI	ZILE	HIZO
Class 11/14 Uso	HUU	ULE	HUO
Class 10 Nyuso	HIZI	ZILE	HIZO

2. PLACE OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE IN THE SENTENCE :

- a. The Demonstrative of proximity is usually placed at the end of the nominal group, after the noun and its adjectives. But it can also be placed in the immediate vicinity of the noun.

EXAMPLES :

Wanafunzi hawa	These pupils
Wanafunzi hodari hawa	These intelligent pupils
Wanafunzi hodari wachache hawa	These few intelligent pupils
Kula chakula hiki kizuri !	Eat this good food !
Lete mizigo hii mizito !	Bring this heavy luggage !

- b. The Demonstrative of distance is placed before or after the noun. When there is a possessive adjective, the demonstrative is placed in front of the noun.

EXAMPLES :

Wale wanafunzi	Those pupils
Wanafunzi wale hodari	Those intelligent pupils
Duka lile kubwa	That big shop
Lile shuka langu	My sheet over there

- c. The Demonstrative of reference is placed close to the noun, preferably in front. When there is a possessive adjective, the demonstrative must be placed after it.

EXAMPLES :

Hilo tunda kubwa	This big fruit
Watoto hao wadogo	These small children
Watoto wao hao	Their children here
Shuka langu hilo	My sheet here

VOCABULARY

Bawa (ma-)	a wing, wings	Tofali (ma-)	a brick, bricks
Kaa (ma-)	charcoal	Tuta (ma-)	a ridge
Kuti (ma-)	a palm, palms	Ua (ma-)	a flower, flowers
Pera (ma-)	a guava, guavas	Wingu (ma-)	a cloud, clouds
Shuka (ma-)	a sheet, sheets	Zao (ma-)	a crop, crops
Tawi (ma-)	a branch, branches	Ziwa (ma-)	a lake, lakes

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. [Demonstrative of proximity] This child, these youths, this young girl, this teacher, this idiot, these workers, this mountain, this town, that luggage, this bag, these trees, this ditch, this door, this flower, these palms, these bricks, this lake, these guavas, these oranges, these pineapples, this corn, these clothes, these chairs, this food, this face.
- b. [Demonstrative of distance] Those travellers, that drunkard, that man, that uncle, those masais, that grandmother, that driver, those friends, that clerk, those banana trees, those coconut trees, that river, that year, those sugar canes, those cities, that rice, that window, those cars, that market, those mangoes, that coarse sack, that mattress, those eggs, those fields, those chairs.
- c. [Demonstrative of reference] This little boy, this rich white man, this old teacher, these intelligent children, this lazy pupil, this important city, this black bag, these large baobab trees, These dirty hands of yours, these unpleasant children of theirs, this beautiful car of yours, take this little chair ! Look at this large poisonous snake ! Take these beautiful flowers ! Buy this charcoal ! Do not take our palms here !

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

Mlango huu, kiti hiki, mtoto huyu, bawa hili, wanaume hawa, matuta haya, nguo hizi, mama huyu, gari lile, mahindi yale, michungwa ile, mfano ule, miavuli ile, nguo ile, ziwa lilo, matofali yayo, tawi lilo, mawingu yale, mwizi huyo, wadudu hao, mwanadamu huyu, nguo hizo, uso huo, viti hivi, chakula hiki.

EXERCISE 3 : Translate into English :

1. Kamata mwizi huyu !
 2. Nunua ule mkate mzuri !
 3. Uza lile gari lako bovu !
 4. Lete mzigo mzito huu !
 5. Kula mapera haya mazuri !
 6. Wanafunzi hodari hawa wamefaulu mtihani.
 7. Duka lile dogo lauza maziwa safi.
 8. Usiseme yale maneno ovyo !
 9. Bwana amenunua gari lile jipya.
 10. Angalia lile joka kubwa !
-



Chapter 16 - The KI-/VI- Gender

The **KI-/VI-** gender (Classes 7 / 8) is a gender of things, just like the **M-/WA-** gender is a gender of people. However, it is not as exclusive, for beside manufactured objects, it also includes nouns of people, parts of the human body, natural products, nouns of places that are built or not, abstract or concrete concepts, etc...

It is in class 7 (in the singular only) that the names of languages are to be found, and the prefix **KI-** is also used as a diminutive.



Cl 7 (Singular) : prefix **KI-**

Cl 8 (Plural) : prefix **VI-**

KITI = a / the chair

VITI = chairs, the chairs

In front of a vowel, the singular prefix **KI-** becomes **CH-** :

the plural prefix **VI-** becomes **VY-** :

CHAKULA = a / the food

VYAKULA = foods / the foods

There are however some exceptions to his rule : **Kiatu** (= shoe), **Kioo** (= mirror), etc..

1. NOUNS GROUPED BY TOPICS :

1. MANUFACTURED OBJECTS :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Chombo	vyombo	a container, a utensil, containers
Chuma	vyuma	iron, irons
Kiatu	viatu	a shoe, shoes
Kiberiti	viberiti	a match, matches

Kidonge	vidonge	a pill, pills
Kijiko	vijiko	a spoon, spoons
Kikapu	vikapu	a basket, baskets
Kiko	viko	a pipe, pipes
Kikombe	vikombe	a cup, cups
Kioo	vioo	a mirror, mirrors
Kipande	vipande	a piece, pieces
Kisu	visu	a knife, knives
Kitabu	vitabu	a book, books
Kitambaa	vitambaa	a piece of cloth, fabrics
Kitanda	vitanda	a bed, beds
Kiti	viti	a chair, chairs
Kitu	vitu	a thing, things

2. NATURAL PRODUCTS, FOOD :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Chakula	vyakula	food, foods
Kiazi	viazi	a potato, potatoes
Kitunguu	vitunguu	an onion, onions

3. NATURAL OR BUILT PLACES :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Choo	vyoo	a toilet, toilets
Chumba	vyumba	a room, rooms
Chuo	vyuo	a school, a college
Kibanda	vibanda	a hut, huts
Kijiji	vijiji	a village, villages
Kilima	vilima	a hill, hills
Kisima	visima	a well, wells
Kisiwa	visiwa	an island, islands
Kiwanja	viwanja	a piece of land, lands

4. NOUNS OF PEOPLE :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
-----------------	---------------	--------------------

Kibarua	vibarua	a day laborer, day laborers
Kijana	vijana	a youth, youths
Kipofu	vipofu	a blind man, blind men
Kiwete	viwete	a handicapped person
Kiziwi	viziwi	a deaf person, deaf persons

5. NOUNS OF ANIMALS :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Kiboko	viboko	an hippopotamus, hippos
Kifaru	vifaru	a rhinoceros, rhinoceroses
Kipepeo	vipepeo	a butterfly, butterflies

6. PARTS OF THE HUMAN BODY :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Kichwa	vichwa	a head, heads
Kidole	vidole	a finger, fingers
Kidonda	vidonda	an ulceration, ulcerations
Kifua	vifua	the chest, chests

7. ABSTRACT OR CONCRETE CONCEPTS :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Cheo	vyeo	a rank, a row, ranks
Cheti	vyeti	a certificate, certificates
Chama	vyama	a party, an association, parties

8. NAMES OF LANGUAGES (Class 7 only) :

SINGULAR	TRANSLATION
Kiarabu	Arabic
Kifaransa	French
Kihindi	Indian, Hindi
Kiingereza	English

Kiswahili

Swahili

2. THE DIMINUTIVE PREFIX KI- :

The prefix **KI-** can have a diminutive value. To that effect the ordinary class prefix of the noun is replaced by the prefix **KI-**. In the plural, we simply replace **KI-** by **VI-**.

	ORIGINE	SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Mtoto	(child)	Kitoto	vitoto	a little child, little children
Sahani	(plate)	Kisahani	visahani	a saucer, saucers

3. CLASS AGREEMENTS :

1. Adjective : The adjective takes prefixes of class agreement that are identical to those of the noun : (See : [Chapter 11](#).)

<u>Class 7</u> :	Kitu	kikubwa / kidogo / kizuri / kibaya / chema / ...	
	a	big / small / beautiful / bad / nice / ...	thing
<u>Class 8</u> :	Vitu	vikubwa / vidogo / vizuri / vibaya / vyema / ...	
		big / small / beautiful / bad / nice / ...	things

2. Possessive adjectives :

<u>Class 7</u> :	Kitu	changu / chako / chake / chetu / chenu / chao	
	=	my / your / his - her / our / your / their	thing
<u>Class 8</u> :	Vitu	vyangu / vyako / vyake / vyetu / vyenu / vyao	
	=	my / your / his - her / our / your / their	things

NOTE : The adjective that qualifies a class 7 / 8 noun of person, must take class 1 / 2 agreements.

Kijana mzuri (instead of kijana kizuri)	A nice young man
Vijana wazuri (instead of vijana vizuri)	Nice young men
Yule kibarua mvivu	That lazy day laborer
Wale vibarua wavivu	Those lazy day laborers

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. A spoon, a cup, a saucer, a knife, a village, a well, a hut, an hippopotamus, a rhinoceros, a head, a certificate, French, Swahili, English, Arabic, a basket, a pill, a pipe, a hill, food.
- b. Onions, matches, shoes, fabrics, containers, books, things, young people, day laborers, handicapped people, butterflies, potatoes, rooms, beds, baskets, mirrors, islands, huts, deaf persons, fingers.
- c. This utensil, these spoons, this chair, this mirror, these beautiful things, this large book, this sharp knife, this beautiful cup, these many hippopotamuses, this new pipe, this good food, these big potatoes, these intelligent young people, those lazy day laborers, this wild rhinoceros.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English and give the plural, whenever possible :

Kijiko, kikombe, kiswahili, kiboko, kikapu, kiatu, kiarabu, kioo, choo, cheti, chuma, kifaransa, kipande, kitabu, kitanda, kifua, kiingereza, kisiwa, kisima, cheo.

EXERCISE 3 : Translate into English :

1. **Watoto hawa wanakula chakula kizuri hiki.**
 2. **Soma kitabu kile kizuri !**
 3. **Kiswahili chako ni kizuri sana.**
 4. **Mama amenunua kikapu kipyra sokoni.**
 5. **Usitupe viazi vidogo vile !**
 6. **Kisu hiki ni kikali sana.**
 7. **Usikate kidole chako na kisu hiki !**
 8. **Tunapenda hicho kijiji chetu.**
 9. **Angalia kifarua yule mkubwa !**
 10. **Kitoto hajala chakula chake bado.**
-



Chapter 17 - The Verb KUWA = to Be

The verb **KUWA** (= TO BE) is by far the most disconcerting verb in Swahili : it is a polymorphic verb that possesses no less than 3 different principal radicals : **-WA-**, **-Ø-** and **-LI-**.

First of all, it is advisable to distinguish clearly the two distinct uses of the verb "to be" in Swahili, which are often confused in English :

1. "To be" descriptive : this verb allots a statute or a quality to somebody or something : I am English, he is rich, dad is a teacher, I'm not sick, etc.
2. "To be" locative : this verb signifies the presence or the absence of somebody or something in a place : I am in Tanzania, he is at home, she is not there, Mafia is in the south, etc.

1. "TO BE" DESCRIPTIVE :

A. PRESENT :

There are two conjugations of the verb "to be" in the present tense : an old one, which is no longer used in the negative form, but still survives in the affirmative form in some set phrases, and a modern one which has the merit of simplicity, since it possesses only two forms : **NI** in the affirmative, and **SI** in the negative, for all persons and all nominal agreements.

AFFIRMATIVE FORM

OLD	MODERN	Translation
NI	NI	I am
U	NI	you are
YU	NI	he / she / it is
TU	NI	we are
M	NI	you are
WA	NI	they are

NEGATIVE FORM

OLD	MODERN	Translation
SIWI	SI	I am not
HUWI	SI	you are not
HAWI	SI	he / she / it is not
HATUWI	SI	we are not
HAMWI	SI	you are not
HAWAWI	SI	they are not



Chapter 18 - The Verb KUWA NA = to Have

For want of a genuine verb "to have" in Swahili, we use the expression **KUWA NA**, which literally means "to be with".

In the absence of a verb radical, the particle **"NA"** is directly coupled to the subject prefix : this is the case in the Present Definite. It will remain separated from the verb in the other tenses and forms, including the infinitive.

1. CONJUGATION OF THE VERB "KUWA NA" :

A. PRESENT :

In the affirmative form, the affirmative subject prefixes are directly followed by the particle **"NA"**, in the absence of any verb radical. (We speak of a \emptyset radical).

The same applies to the negative form, where the negative subject prefixes are directly followed by the particle **"NA"**.

CLASS	AFFIRMATIVE	Translation	NEGATIVE	Translation
1	NINA	I have	SINA	I haven't
2	UNA	you have	HUNA	you haven't
CI 1 Mtu 3	ANA	he / she has	HANA	he / she hasn't
1	TUNA	we have	HATUNA	we haven't
2	MNA	you have	HAMNA	you haven't
CI 2 Watu 3	WANA	they have	HAWANA	they haven't
CI 3 Mti	UNA	it has	HAUNA	it hasn't
CI 4 Miti	INA	they have	HAINA	they haven't
CI 5 Gari	LINA	it has	HALINA	it hasn't
CI 6 Magari	YANA	they have	HAYANA	they haven't
CI 7 Kiti	KINA	it has	HAKINA	it hasn't
CI 8 Viti	VINA	they have	HAVINA	they haven't
CI 9 Nguo	INA	it has	HAINA	it hasn't
CI 10 Nguo	ZINA	they have	HAZINA	they haven't
CI 11 Uso	UNA	it has	HAUNA	it hasn't
CI 10 Nyuso	ZINA	they have	HAZINA	they haven't

EXAMPLES :**Nina vitabu vingi**

I have many books

Mtoto huyu ana uso mzuri

This child has a pretty face

Watumishi wana mishahara midogo

The servants have small wages

Mti ule una matawi mengi

That tree has many branches

Kilima hiki kina miti mirefu

This hill has tall trees

Sina nguo nyingi

I haven't many clothes

Hatuna chakula kingine

We haven't much food

Hamisi hana viatu

Hamisi has no shoes

B. PAST :

AFFIRMATIVE	Translation	NEGATIVE	Translation
NILIKUWA NA	I had	SIKUWA NA	I didn't have
ULIKUWA NA	you had	HUKUWA NA	you didn't have
ALIKUWA NA	he / she had	HAKUWA NA	he / she didn't have
TULIKUWA NA	we had	HATUKUWA NA	we didn't have
MLIKUWA NA	you had	HAMKUWA NA	you didn't have
WALIKUWA NA	they had	HAWAKUWA NA	they didn't have

C. FUTURE :

AFFIRMATIVE	Translation	NEGATIVE	Translation
NITAKUWA NA	I will have	SITAKUWA NA	I won't have
UTAKUWA NA	you will have	HUTAKUWA NA	you won't have
ATAKUWA NA	he / she will have	HATAKUWA NA	he / she won't have
TUTAKUWA NA	we will have	HATUTAKUWA NA	we won't have
MTAKUWA NA	you will have	HAMTAKUWA NA	you won't have
WATAKUWA NA	they will have	HAWATAKUWA NA	they won't have

E. OTHER TENSES :

PAST PERFECT :

Nimekuwa na = I have had
Amekuwa na = he / she has had

PAST PERFECT NEGATIVE :

Sijawa na = I haven't had yet
Hajawa na = he / she hasn't had yet

SUBJUNCTIVE :

Niwe na = that I have
awe na = that he / she have

-KI- TENSE :

Nikiwa na = if I have
Akiwa na = if he / she has

PRESENT CONDITIONAL :

Ningekuwa na = I would have
Angekuwa na = he / she would have

PAST CONDITIONAL :

Ningalikuwa na = I would have had
Angalikuwa na = he / she would have had

2. TO TRANSLATE "THERE IS", "THERE ISN'T" :

Unlike in English, we use in Swahili the verb "to have" (**KUWA NA**) to translate the concept of "THERE IS". The ordinary nominal subject prefixes are simply replaced by a series of three locative subject prefixes. The distinction between singular and plural (there is / there are) is not marked in Swahili :

PA- (class 16) for a definite place
KU- (class 17) for an indefinite place
M- (class 18) for an interior place

AFFIRMATIVE	Translation	NEGATIVE	Translation
PANA	There is here / there	HAPANA	There isn't here / there
KUNA	There is over here / there	HAKUNA	There isn't over there
MNA	There is inside	HAMNA	There isn't inside

EXAMPLES :

Kuna vitabu vingi	There are many books (here)
Kuna maziwa ? - Hakuna bado	There is milk ? - There isn't yet
Unasema kiswahili ? - Hapana	Do you speak Swahili ? - No
Pana wanyama wakali porini	There are savage animals in the bush
Kuna Coca-Cola ? - Hamna	There is Coca-Cola ? - There isn't
Hakuna matata ! / Hakuna matatizo !	There is no problem !
Hamna shida ! / Hamna tabu !	There is no problem !

VOCABULARY

Mbuni (mi-)	a coffee tree	Mpango (mi-)	a plan, a project
Mkataba (mi-)	a contract	Mpunga (mi-)	rice (paddy)
Mkia (mi-)	a tail	Msikiti (mi-)	a mosque
Mkutano (mi-)	a meeting	Mstari (mi-)	a line
Mnara (mi-)	a minaret	Msumari (mi-)	a nail
Mpaka (mi-)	a border, a limit	Mtihani (mi-)	an examination, an exam

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. You have, she has, they have, we have, I have, you have (plur), he has, you haven't, he hasn't, they haven't, we haven't, I haven't, you haven't (plur), there is (here), there isn't (here), there is (inside), there isn't (inside), there is (over there), there isn't (over there).
- b. Have you a book ? The child has a big head, this young man has a knife, there is a book, we have many animals, the woman has many children, these children have a good teacher, do you have pawpaws ? Juma has clean shoes, I have a new cup, this village has many villagers, this animal has many insects, you have dirty hands, this mountain has many trees, this bed has a clan shit, we don't have children, do you have eggs ? The driver has no car, the car has no driver, the farmer has a large field.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Mzungu ana mizigo mizito.
2. Sina (jambo) la kusema.
3. Mkate upo ? - Hamna.
4. Miembe ile ina maembe mengi.
5. Mtoto maskini huyu hana chahula kila siku.
6. Mna wenyeji wengi Nairobi.
7. Gari lile lina matatizo mengi.
8. Wanachama wana mkutano leo.
9. Kitanda hiki hakina shuka.
10. Tuna mtihani wa kiswahili leo.



Chapter 19 - Adverbs

REMINDER : An adverb is an invariable word that says how an action proceeds (quickly, slowly, etc...), with which frequency (often, sometimes, never, etc...). It expresses possibility or certainty (maybe, certainly, etc...), or qualifies an adjective (very large, quite small, etc...)

In Swahili, the adverb is placed after the verb, except in some particular cases.

1. COMMON ADVERBS :

Badala	instead of	Mno	too much
Bure	in vain	Pamoja	together
Ghafa	suddenly	Ovyo	anyhow
Hakika	sure	Pengine	maybe
Halisi	exactly	Pia	also, too
Haraka	quickly	Sana	very
Hasa	especially	Taratibu	regularly
Kabisa	completely	Tena	again
Kadhalika	in the same way	Tu	only
Kamwe	never, at all	Upesi	quickly
Kweli	true	Upya	again
Labda	perhaps	Zaidi	more

ADVERBS FORMED ON THE PREFIXES KI- and VI-

COMPARISON		MANNER	
Kiaskari	like a soldier	Hivi	in this way
Kidogo	a little	Hivyo	in that way
Kinyama	like an animal	Vibaya	badly
Kipumbavu	like an idiot	Vigumu	difficult
Kishamba	like a peasant	Vingine	in another way
Kishenzi	like a savage	Vinginevyo	in any other way
Kitoto	like a child	Vivyo	in the same way
Kizungu	like a white	Vizuri	well

2. COMPOUND ADVERBS :

Hata kidogo	not at all
Mbali mbali	differently
Moja moja	one by one
Peke yake	alone
Pole pole	slowly
Ovyo ovyo	badly
Sawa sawa	similarly
Vile vile	equally
Vivi hivi	so so
Vivyo hivyo	exactly the same

ADVERBS MADE UP WITH KWA

Kwa bahati	fortunately	Kwa kusudi	voluntarily
Kwa ghafla	suddenly	Kwa kutwa	daily
Kwa haraka	hastily, in haste	Kwa kweli	really
Kwa hiyo	thus, so	Kwa sababu hii	then, therefore
Kwa kawaida	usually	Kwa sauti	loudly
Kwa kifupi	in short	Kwa siri	secretly

3. A FEW EXAMPLES :

Fanya haraka !	Hurry up !
Wamechoka kabisa.	They are really tired.
Usijibu ovyo !	Don't answer badly !
Jibu vizuri !	Answer correctly !
Ngoja kidogo !	Wait a little !
Nenda pole pole !	Go slowly !
Njoo haraka !	Come quickly !
Nimechelewa kidogo.	I am a little late.
Mtoto anatumia kisu vibaya.	The child uses his knife wrongly.
Sema kwa sauti !	Speak aloud !
Ninataka mkate mmoja tu.	I want one bread only.
Kusema kiswahili si vigumu.	Speaking Swahili is not difficult.
Yeye si mpishi, hata kidogo.	He is not a cook, not at all.

VOCABULARY

Chandarua (vy-)	a mosquito net	Kifuniko (vi-)	a cover, a lid
Chura (vy-)	a frog	Kikoi (vi-)	a loin cloth
Kibaba (vi-)	a measure	Kipimo (vi-)	a measure
Kinu (vi-)	a mortar	Kitana (vi-)	a comb
Kibuyu (vi-)	a calabash, a gourd	Kiwanda (vi-)	a workshop
Kifo (vi-)	death	Kizibo (vi-)	a cork

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. Suddenly, together, maybe, only, more, too much, above all, truly, quickly, in vain, again, very, not at all, alone, one by one, fortunately, voluntarily, in short, then, this way.
- b. He speaks like an idiot, he leaves suddenly, we work daily, they hit like savages, this luggage is very heavy, this one is too heavy, the rhinoceros is coming again, hurry up ! The master is maybe coming back today, the little child is eating slowly, this pupil studies regularly, I have one child only, I am completely tired, the guests are a little late, here are the news in brief.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

Pole pole, vile vile, mbali mbali, sawa sawa, hivyo, vivyo, pengine, labda, hakika, kamwe, kwa kweli, bure, ovyo, pamoja, peke yake, hasa, kizungu, kinyama, kidogo, kwa kawaida.

EXERCISE 3 : Translate into English :

1. Je, chakula tayari ? - Bado kidogo, bwana.
2. Usiseme upesi, sema pole pole tu.

3. Hasemi kitu, hata kidogo.
4. Kwa bahati mzuri, nimeona kifaru mmoja porini.
5. Kwa kawaida, mpishi wetu anachelewa kazini.
6. Fagia chumba hiki, na kile vile vile.
7. Usinfunge mlango ghafula, tafadhali.
8. Mtoto ametupa jiwe lile kwa kusudi.
9. Watoto wanasimama kiaskari.
10. Gari lile ni ghali mno.
11. Kwa kweli, chandarua hiki kinafaa kabisa.
12. Nimepotea kitana changu tena.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 20 - The N- Gender

The **N-** gender (Classes 9 / 10) is one of the broadest genders : it comprises nouns of people, animals, plants, food, objects used in everyday life, natural elements, abstract nouns, etc..

Many nouns borrowed from English are absorbed in the **N-** gender.

This gender is very particular in that it contains a large number of nouns which do not start with the prefix **N-** (we speak of a **Ø-** prefix). Yet it's the only gender that comprises nouns starting with **N-**.

For phonetic reasons the prefix **N-** changes into **M-** in front of **B, P** and **V**.

However the main characteristic of this class is that the noun is identical in the singular and the plural.



Cl 9 Singular :

prefix **N-**
prefix **Ø-**

NGUO = a / the cloth

KAZI = a / the work

Cl 10 Plural :

prefix **N-**
prefix **Ø-**

NGUO = clothes / the clothes

KAZI = works / the works

In the absence of any distinctive prefixes of class, it is indeed the class agreements inside the sentence (verbal, demonstrative or possessive prefixes, etc..) that make it possible to distinguish between singular and plural. Thus :

Singular		Plural	
NGUO <u>ILE</u>	= that cloth	NGUO <u>ZILE</u>	= those clothes
NGUO <u>YANGU</u>	= my cloth	NGUO <u>ZANGU</u>	= my clothes

1. NOUNS OF THE N- GENDER GROUPED BY TOPICS :

1. PEOPLE :

Askari	a soldier	Mama	mother, mum
Baba	father, dad	Ndugu	brother, comrade
Babu	grandfather	Nyanya	grandmother
Dada	sister	Rafiki	friend
Kaka	brother	Shemeji	brother-in-law, sister-in-law

2. MANUFACTURED OBJECTS :

Barua	a letter	Ngoma	a drum
Chupa	a bottle	Sabuni	soap
Dawa	a drug, a medicine	Sahani	a plate
Kalamu	a pen	Sufuria	a pan
Karatasi	a paper	Suruali	trousers

3. NATURE :

Ardhi	ground, earth	Hewa	air, atmosphere
Bahari	sea	Nuru	light
Baridi	cold	Mvua	rain
Barafu	ice	Njia	a way

4. ABSTRACT CONCEPTS :

Ajali	an accident	Huzuni	sadness
Bahati	luck	Nguvu	strength
Furaha	joy	Ruhusa	permission
Hasara	a loss	Shida	difficulties
Hatari	a danger	Thamani	value

5. ANIMALS :

Kuku	a chicken	Ng'ombe	a cow
Mbu	a mosquito	Nyoka	a snake
Mbuzi	a goat	Paka	a cat
Mbwa	a dog	Samaki	a fish
Ndege	a bird	Simba	a lion

6. FOOD, FRUITS, VEGETABLES :

Chai	tea	Ndizi	a banana
Chumvi	salt	Nyama	meat
Kahawa	coffee	Pilipili	pepper
Mboga	a vegetable	Siagi	butter, margarine
Nazi	a coconut	Sukari	sugar

2. CLASS AGREEMENTS :

1. Adjective : The adjective takes the prefix **N-** and follows the same rules as the noun :

- It takes **N-** in front of a radical that starts with **D, G** or **Z**.
- It takes **M-** in front of a radical that starts with **B, P** or **V**.
- It takes **NY-** in front of a radical that starts with a vowel.
- It doesn't take any prefix in all other cases.

(See : [Chapter 11 - Concordant Adjectives.](#))

<u>Class 9 :</u>	Nguo	kubwa / ndogo / nzuri / mbaya / nyeusi / ...	
	a	large / small / beautiful / bad / dark / ...	cloth
<u>Class 10 :</u>	Nguo	kubwa / ndogo / nzuri / mbaya / nyeusi / ...	
		large / small / beautiful / bad / dark / ...	clothes

2. Possessive adjectives :

<u>Class 9 :</u>	Nguo	yangu / yako / yake / yetu / yenu / yao	
	=	my / your / his-her-its / our / your (plur) / their	cloth
<u>Class 10 :</u>	Nguo	zangu / zako / zake / zetu / zenu / zao	
	=	my / your / his-her-its / our / your (plur) / their	clothes

NOTE : When the noun it refers to is a person, the possessive adjective takes agreements of the **N-** gender, instead of the usual **M-/WA-** gender agreements, which makes it possible to distinguish between the singular and the plural.

EXAMPLES :

Ninacheza mpira na rafiki yangu
Ninacheza mpira na rafiki zangu
Amekwenda sokoni na dada yake
Nyanya yangu mkali

I play football with my friend
 I play football with my friends
 She has gone to the market with her sister
 My grandmother is severe

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. Salt, pepper, a banana, a coconut, a dog, a cat, a fish, a goat, a danger, a loss, sadness, the value, ice, cold, rain, a way, a bottle, a drug, soap, a plate.
- b. My grandmother, my grandfather, my friend, my friends, this sister-in-law, these sisters-in-law, my trousers, my clothes, my pen, this large lion, this little cat, this fierce dog, my tea, your coffee, a great sadness, a great danger, bad luck, delicious bananas, rotten coconuts, a long way.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

- a. Kahawa, chai, siagi, sukari, thamani, mbuzi, mbwa, mbu, nguvu, mvua, nuru, hewa, ardhi, bahari, mboga, nyama, karatasi, ngoma, sahani, ndugu, rafiki, askari, hasara, ruhusa, ndege.
- b. Rafiki zako, mama yangu, dada yake, kaka yetu, nyanya yako, nguo zangu, suruali yake, chupa zetu, barua yangu, kalamu yako, sahani zake, ruhusa yako, mbwa yangu, kuku zao, furaha yake, shida zetu, ndizi zao, nazi zangu, paka yako, hasara yenu.

EXERCISE 3 : Translate into English :

1. Mpishi amepika chai na kahawa.
2. Wanafunzi wana karatasi na kalamu.
3. Unataka nyama au samaki ?
4. Mnazi huu una nazi nyingi.
5. Gari lako ni hatari kubwa njiani.
6. Mtoto anakula mkate na chai asubuhi.
7. Kuna nyama leo ? - Hakuna.
8. Nimepotea paka yangu mdogo.

9. Pole sana kwa hasara yako.
10. Mimi mgonjwa sana. Sina nguvu hata kidogo.
11. Leo tunakula kuku na supu na mboga mbali mbali.
12. Chai hiyo baridi mno. Tia moto tena !

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 21 - Interrogative Words

When asking a question in Swahili, we don't use any auxiliary verb, or invert the position of the subject and the auxiliary, as is often practiced in English. Since the subject prefix remains attached to the verb root, it is indeed the intonation, and possibly the presence of an interrogative word in the sentence that signal it is a question.

The interrogative word is usually located before or after the verb.

PRINCIPAL INTERROGATIVE WORDS :

1. **NANI ?** = Who ?

- Mtoto huyu (ni) nani ?	Who is this child ?
- Nani huyo ?	Who is he / she ?
- Jina lako nani ?	What's your name ? (<i>Who your name ?</i>)
- Nani anataka kitabu hiki ?	Who wants this book ?
- Umeona nani ?	Who have you seen ?
- Nani aliyekupiga ?	Who hit you ?

2. **NINI ?** = What ?

- Unataka nini ?	What do you want ?
- Nini hii ?	What is it ?
- Unasema nini ?	What do you say ?
- Nichukue nini na nini ?	What should I take ?

3. **GANI ?** = What ? / What sort ? / What kind ? / Which ?

- Unataka kitu gani ?	What do you want ?
- Kuna soda gani ?	What kind of soda is there ?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| - Unafanya kazi <u>gani</u> ? | What sort of work do you do ? |
| - Vitunguu <u>kiasi gani</u> ? | How much are the onions ? |
| - Mananasi <u>bei gani</u> ? | What price are the pineapples ? |
| - Umepata ajali <u>namna gani</u> ? | How have you got an accident ? |

4.

WAPI ? = Where ?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| - Wageni wamekwenda <u>wapi</u> ? | Where have the guests gone ? |
| - Bwana yuko <u>wapi</u> ? | Where is the master ? |

5. **-NGAPI ?** = How much ? / How many ?**-ngapi ?** works like an adjective. It is placed after the name and agrees in class with it.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| CI 2 - Watu <u>wangapi</u> ? | How many people ? |
| CI 4 - Miaka <u>mingapi</u> ? | How many years ? |
| CI 6 - Machungwa <u>mangapi</u> ? | How many oranges ? |
| CI 8 - Vijiko <u>vingapi</u> ? | How many spoons ? |
| CI 10 - Nyumba <u>ngapi</u> ? | How many houses ? |

EXAMPLES :

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| - Wako watu <u>wangapi</u> Zanzibar ? | How many people in Zanzibar ? |
| - Kikapu hiki <u>shilingi ngapi</u> ? | How much is this basket ? |
| - Basi linaondoka <u>saa ngapi</u> ? | What time does the bus leave ? |
| - Umekwenda Lamu <u>mara ngapi</u> ? | How often have you been to Lamu ? |

6. **LINI ?** = When ?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| - Utarudi <u>lini</u> ? | When will you come back ? |
| - Tangu <u>lini</u> umekuwa mgonjwa ? | Since when have you been ill ? |
| - Mvua itakwisha <u>lini</u> ? | When will the rain stop ? |
| - <u>Lini</u> watakwenda Mombasa ? | When will they go to Mombasa ? |

7. **JE ?** or **-JE ?** affixed to the verb = What ? / How ?

- <u>Je</u> , unakwenda Nairobi leo ?	I say, are you going to Nairobi today ?
- <u>Je</u> kazi imekwisha ?	Eh ! Is work finished ?
- <u>Viatu hivi unauzaje</u> ?	How much do you sell these shoes ?
- <u>Unasemaje</u> ?	What do you say ?
- <u>Tufanyeje</u> ?	What should we do ?
- <u>Nakwenda sokoni. Wewe je</u> ?	I'm going to the market. What about you ?

8. **-PI ?** = Which one / Which ones ?

-pi ? works like a pronoun. It can be used by itself or after a noun with which it agrees, taking pronominal prefixes of agreement.

CI 1 - <u>Mtu yupi</u> ?	Which person ?
CI 2 - <u>Watu wapi</u> ?	Which people ?
CI 3 - <u>Mti upi</u> ?	Which tree ?
CI 4 - <u>Miti ipi</u> ?	Which trees ?
CI 5 - <u>Tunda lipi</u> ?	Which fruit ?
CI 6 - <u>Matunda yapi</u> ?	Which fruits ?
CI 7 - <u>Kitu kipi</u> ?	Which thing ?
CI 8 - <u>Vitu vipi</u> ?	Which things ?
CI 9 - <u>Nguo ipi</u> ?	Which cloth ?
CI 10 - <u>Nguo zipi</u> ?	Which clothes ?
CI 11 - <u>Usiku upi</u> ?	Which night ?

EXAMPLES :

- <u>Tushike njia ipi</u> ?	Which way should we take ?
- <u>Umeleta ipi</u> ?	Which one have you brought ?
- <u>Unataka zipi</u> ?	Which ones do you want ?
- <u>Utafanya vipi</u> ?	How will you do ?

9. **KWA NINI ?** = Why ?

- <u>Kwa nini</u> unachelewa kila siku ?	Why are you late every day ?
- <u>Kwa nini</u> unataka kazi ?	Why do you want a job ?
- <u>Kwa nini</u> hakuna sukari ?	Why is there no sugar ?

10. **KWA SABABU GANI ?** = For what reason ?

- **Kwa sababu gani unachelewa kila siku ?** For what reason are you late every day ?

VOCABULARY

Akili	intelligence	Mali	fortune
Faida	profit	Markiti	the market (in Z'bar)
Fedha	money	Meza	a table
Fikira	a thought	Nchi	a country
Habari	a news	Nyumba	a house
Hasira	anger	Shule / Skuli	a school

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

1. Who is that man ?
2. Whose are these clothes ?
3. Who threw this stone ?
4. What do you sell ?
5. How much do you sell these oranges ?
6. What kind of animal is it ?
7. What kind of fruit is it ?
8. What wages do you want ?
9. How many day laborers do you need ?
10. How many luggages are there at home ?
11. What's your name ?
12. What sort of meat is there at the market ?
13. How many fruit have you bought ?
14. Where do these vegetables come from ?
15. How many eggs should I buy ?

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Mwalimu yuko wapi ? - Yuko nyumbani.
2. Watoto wako wapi ? - Wako shuleni.
3. Kuna wanyama gani Serengeti ?
4. Unafanya nini shambani ?
5. Nitawezaje kubeba mzigo huu ?
6. Wamefika Nairobi lini ?
7. Kisu changu kipyra kiko wapi ?
8. Kwa nini umepika kuku na mboga tena ?
9. Je, umesoma kitabu hiki ?
10. Jina lako nani ? - Jina langu Idi Kibogoyo.
11. Mkutano unianza saa ngapi ?
12. Watoto wangapi wamekosa kuja shuleni leo ?
13. Kwa nini unachelewa kazini kila siku ?
14. Unasemaje ? - Sina la kusema.
15. Chai iko wapi ? - Iko mezani.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 22 - Numbers

1. NUMBERS FROM 1 TO 20 :

1	-MOJA	11	KUMI NA -MOJA
2	-WILI / MBILI	12	KUMI NA -WILI / MBILI
3	-TATU	13	KUMI NA -TATU
4	-NNE	14	KUMI NA -NNE
5	-TANO	15	KUMI NA -TANO
6	SITA	16	KUMI NA SITA
7	SABA	17	KUMI NA SABA
8	-NANE	18	KUMI NA -NANE
9	TISA	19	KUMI NA TISA
10	KUMI	20	ISHIRINI

Numbers in Swahili behave like adjectives, and like all adjectives, they are placed after the noun, but before the demonstrative. One characteristic of the numbers is that some of them are invariable while others are concordant. Thus :

Numbers 6, 7, 9, 10, 20 are invariable and do not take class prefixes.

Numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 8 agree with the noun and take a class prefix.

NOTE :

By their nature, number 1 (**-moja**) takes only class agreements in the singular, whereas numbers 2 (**-wili**), 3 (**-tatu**), 4 (**-nne**), 5 (**-tano**) and 8 (**-nane**) take only plural agreements. In the case of a composite number (11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 18, etc.) only the concordant part of the number takes a prefix of class.

AGREEMENTS OF THE NUMBERS : 2, 3, 4, 5, 8 :

CLASS / NOUN	2	3	4	5	8
Cl 2 Watoto	wawili	watatu	wanne	watano	wanane
Cl 4 Mikate	miwili	mitatu	minne	mitano	minane
Cl 6 Matunda	mawili	matatu	manne	matano	manane
Cl 8 Viti	viwili	vitatu	vinne	vitano	vinane
Cl 10 Nguo	mbili	tatu	nne	tano	nane

EXAMPLES :

1	Mtoto mmoja	One child
1	Mkate mmoja	One bread
1	Tunda moja	One fruit
1	Nguo moja	One cloth
1	Kijiko kimoja	One spoon
3	Miaka mitatu	Three years
6	Matunda sita	Six fruits
8	Matunda manane	Eight fruits
8	Watu wanane	Eight people
11	Vijiko kumi na kimoja	Eleven spoons
12	Vijiko kumi na viwili	Twelve spoons
13	Matunda kumi na matatu	Thirteen fruits
14	Miti kumi na minne	Fourteen trees
18	Watu kumi na wanane	Eighteen people
25	Watu ishirini na watano	Twenty-five people

2. TENS :

10	KUMI	
20	ISHIRINI	60
30	THELATHINI	70
40	AROBAINI	80
50	HAMSINI	90
		SITINI
		SABINI
		THEMANINI
		TISINI

When a ten is followed by a unit, the unit is introduced by the word **NA** = and.

EXAMPLES :

21	Watoto ishirini na mmoja	Twenty-one children
34	Watu thelathini na wanne	Thirty-four people
61	Viti sitini na kimoja	Sixty-one chairs
78	Viti sabini na vinane	Seventy-eight chairs

3. HUNDREDS :

100	MIA (MOJA)		
200	MIA MBILI	600	MIA SITA
300	MIA TATU	700	MIA SABA
400	MIA NNE	800	MIA NANE
500	MIA TANO	900	MIA TISA

When a hundred is followed by tens and units, we use the word **NA** (= and), but only once, between the last two numbers.

EXAMPLES :

101	Mia na moja
110	Mia na kumi
111	Mia kumi na moja
308	Mia tatu na nane
328	Mia tatu ishirini na nane

4. THOUSANDS :

1000	ELFU (MOJA)		
2000	ELFU MBILI	6000	ELFU SITA
3000	ELFU TATU	7000	ELFU SABA
4000	ELFU NNE	8000	ELFU NANE
5000	ELFU TANO	9000	ELFU TISA

In numbers containing thousands, the word **NA** introduces the tens or the units, but it is never used between the thousands and the hundreds.

EXAMPLES :

1001	Elfu moja na moja
1600	Elfu moja mia sita
1735	Elfu moja mia saba thelathini na tano
4352	Elfu nne mia tatu hamsini na mbili
4500	Elfu nne mia tano
7800	Elfu saba mia nane
8903	Elfu nane mia tisa na tatu

5. TENS OF THOUSANDS :

When handling numbers with tens of thousands, some care must be taken to avoid confusions. For example :

Number **15.000** should read : **Elfu kumi na tano**, which can also be interpreted as : **1015** !

Thus, to avoid any risk of confusion, the word **elfu** will be placed AFTER the number that quantifies it, and the number will read : **15.000 = Kumi na tano elfu**.

This rule must be observed every time the tens of thousands are not followed by any other number.

EXAMPLES :

16.000	Kumi na sita elfu
30.000	Thelathini elfu
48.000	Arobaini na nane elfu

On the other hand, when the tens of thousands are followed by hundreds, tens, or units, there is no such risk of confusion, and the words retain their normal order.

EXAMPLES :

16.030	Elfu kumi na sita na thelatini
30.200	Elfu thelathini mia mbili
48.025	Elfu arobaini na nane ishirini na tano

NOTE :

There is a Swahili word to designate the hundreds of thousands : **LAKI** = lakh, lac. Thus :
Laki mbili = 200.000, **Laki sita** = 600.000, etc.
 Million is : **MILIONI**.

6. FRACTIONS :

1/2	Nusu	a half
1/4	Robo	a quarter
1/8	Thumni	an eighth

7. DECIMALS :

The figure "zero" is : **SIFURI**.

The word "point" is : **NUKTA** or **POINTI**.

Decimal numbers are read in Swahili as in English, i.e. by separating each figure after the point.

EXAMPLES :

- 0.5 Sifuri nukta tano
 10.25 Kumi nukta mbili, tano
 20.125 Ishirini nukta moja, mbili, tano

8. ORDINAL NUMBERS :

-A KWANZA	Mtoto wa kwanza	The first child
-A PILI	Gari la pili	The second car
-A TATU	Mara ya tatu	The third time
-A NNE	Mkate wa nne	The fourth bread
-A TANO	Nyumba ya tano	The fifth house
-A SITA	Mnyama wa sita	The sixth animal
-A SABA	Siku ya saba	The seventh day
-A NANE	Mti wa nane	The eighth tree
-A TISA	Mwezi wa tisa	The ninth month
-A KUMI	Mtu wa kumi	The tenth person

**Chakubanga**

- Leo ni siku ya tisa sijalewa, inaelekea nataka kuacha ulevi.
- Bila shaka hizo siku tisa huna pesa ! Mimi najua.
- Today is the ninth day since I haven't drunk, I'm certainly going to stop drinking.
- Without a doubt you had no money during those nine days ! I'm sure of this.

VOCABULARY

Eka	an acre	Kilometa	a kilometer
Futi	a foot	Lita	a liter
Galoni	a gallon	Mali	a mile
Hatua	a step	Mita	a meter
Inchi	an inch	Ratili	a pound
Kilo	a kilo	Yadi / wari	a yard

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Write these numbers in letters in Swahili :

0 ; 9 ; 22 ; 31 ; 89 ; 93 ; 157 ; 235 ; 695 ; 762 ; 1049 ; 2203 ; 7.000 ; 10.056 ;
10.914 ; 14.000 ; 14.005 ; 134.000 ; 300.000 ; 752.326 .

EXERCISE 2 : Write these numbers in figures :

Kumi na tano ; kumi na tisa ; ishirini na saba ; thelathini na moja ; arobaini na nne ; hamsini na nane ; sabini na tatu ; themanini na tano ; mia mbili ; mia nne ; mia saba ; mia tatu kumi na sita ; elfu tano ; elfu kumi ; elfu kumi na mbili mia tano sabini na nne ; kumi na tano elfu ; arobaini na mbili elfu ; laki moja ; laki saba ; milioni mbili.

EXERCISE 3 : Translate into Swahili, writing the numbers in letters :

12 cups ; 30 trees ; 11 chairs ; 24 years ; 3 children ; 2 dogs ; 3 cats ; 10 cows ; 115 islands ; 21 people ;
4 fruits ; 8 oranges ; 4 spoons ; 12 houses ; 3 young people ; 14 lessons ; 18 animals ; 4 bananas ; 225
pupils ; 22 teachers.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 23 - Time

Tanzania and Kenya being located close to the equator, there are few variations during the year in the hours of sunrise and sunset. The sun rises around six o'clock in the morning and sets around six o'clock in the evening.

Therefore 7 o'clock in the morning is the first hour of the day, and seven o'clock in the evening is the first hour of the night : We may consider that there is a six hour shift between Western time and "Swahili" time..

However, while time is read and even written according to the Swahili system, the clocks are always set Western fashion... So one always has to add or subtract mentally 6 hours, to read time correctly !

1. THE HOUR :

In Swahili, the word **SAA** (= hour) precedes the figure. Thus :

SWAHILI TIME		WESTERN TIME
SAA MOJA	one o'clock	7 o'clock in the morning
SAA MBILI	two o'clock	8 o'clock in the morning
SAA TATU	three o'clock	9 o'clock in the morning
SAA NNE	four o'clock	10 o'clock in the morning
SAA TANO	five o'clock	11 o'clock in the morning
SAA SITA	six o'clock	12 o'clock in the morning
SAA SABA	seven o'clock	1 o'clock in the afternoon
SAA NANE	eight o'clock	2 o'clock in the afternoon
SAA TISA	nine o'clock	3 o'clock in the afternoon
SAA KUMI	ten o'clock	4 o'clock in the afternoon
SAA KUMI NA MOJA	eleven o'clock	5 o'clock in the evening
SAA KUMI NA MBILI	twelve o'clock	6 o'clock in the evening

EXPRESSION : **Sasa ni saa saba kamili** = It is now one o'clock sharp (*now is seven o'clock completely*)

Reading the time over a 24 hour period is not common in Swahili. Therefore, to distinguish between the hours of the night and the hours of the day, we must use different expressions marking the moment of the day :

- "YA ASUBUHI" (= in the morning)
- "YA MCHANA" (= in the afternoon)
- "YA JIONI" (= in the evening)
- "YA USIKU" (= at night)

<u>EXAMPLES :</u>	Saa moja ya asubuhi	= one o'clock in the morning	(= 7 am)
	Sa nane ya mchana	= eight o'clock in the afternoon	(= 2 pm)
	Saa moja ya jioni	= one o'clock in the evening	(= 7 pm)
	Saa tatu ya usiku	= three o'clock at night	(= 9 pm), etc...

2. SOME MINUTES PAST :

The word "minute" is : **DAKIKA**. One will mention the additional minutes while counting as follows :

Saa moja...	<u>na</u> dakika tano	five past	...seven
	<u>na</u> dakika kumi	ten past	
	<u>na</u> robo	quarter past	
	<u>na</u> dakika shirini	twenty past	

The word "quarter" is : **ROBO**.

The word "half" is : **NUSU**.

Saa tatu <u>na</u> robo	Quarter past three	(= 9 h 15)
Saa tatu <u>u</u> nusu	Half past three	(= 9 h 30)
Saa kumi na mbili <u>u</u> nusu	Half past twelve	(= 6 h 30)

Note that to add minutes and a quarter, we use the word **NA** (= and), while to add a half we use the word **U** (from the Arabic "WA" = and)

3. SOME MINUTES TO :

Past the half, we count the missing minutes to reach the following hour. We use the expressions :

KASORO DAKIKA ... = ... minutes to ; and **KASOROBO** = quarter to.

EXAMPLES :

Saa nane kasoro dakika kumi	ten to eight	(= ten to two)
------------------------------------	--------------	----------------

Saa tisa kasoro dakika ishirini	twenty to nine	(= <i>twenty to three</i>)
Saa tisa kasorobo	quarter to nine	(= <i>quarter to three</i>)

4. DIFFERENT PERIODS OF THE DAY AND OF THE NIGHT :

Every 24 hour period can be divided as follows :

KUCHA	Sunrise	Dawn
ASUBUHI	from 6 am to 12 am approximately	Morning
MCHANA	from 1 pm to 4 / 5 pm approximately	The day
JIONI	from 4 pm to 6 pm approximately	Evening
MACHWA	Sunset	The twilight
USIKU	from 6 pm to 5 am	Night
USIKU KUCHA	from 6 pm to 5 am	The whole night
USIKU WA MANANE	around 2 am	The dead of the night
KUCHA KUTWA	24 hours	The whole day and whole night

5. PRAYER TIMES :

In strongly islamized places such as Zanzibar, Lamu (an island north of kenya), etc., the five Muslim prayers give its rythm to the day and constitute for the local population temporal reference points, almost like "hours" :

ALFAJIRI	around 5.45 am / 6.30 am	The dawn prayer
ADHUHURI	around 12 am / 12.30 am	The noon prayer
ALASIRI	around 3 pm / 5 pm	The afternoon prayer
MAGHARIBI	around 6 pm / 6.30 pm	The sunset prayer
ALESHA	around 8 pm and after	The night prayer

VOCABULARY

Bata	a duck	Panya	a rat, a mouse
Farasi	a horse	Punda	a donkey
Jogoo	a cock	Mbwa mwitu	a wolf, a wild dog

Kondoo a sheep
Nguruwe a pig
Njiwa a pigeon

Sungura a hare, a rabbit
Tembo / Ndovu an elephant
Twiga a giraffe

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

7 h 15, 6 h 30 in the evening, 2 h 10, noon, half past three, what time have you got ? Twenty-five to four, 17 h, five past one, nine o'clock, eight o'clock at night, three o'clock in the morning, sunset, evening, dawn.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

Alfajiri, alasiri, magharibi, asubuhi, mchana, usiku, jioni, saa tisa u nusu, saa tatu na dakika kumi, saa sita kasoro dakika tano, saa kumi na mbili ya usiku, saa saba kasorobo, saa tisa, saa tano na dakika kumi na mbili, saa saba kamili.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 24 - Days, Months, Dates

1. DAYS OF THE WEEK :

The names of the days of the week in Swahili are a curious mixture of two languages, Arabic and Bantu. Thus, the five first days of the week have got Bantu names, from **Jumamosi** (= Saturday), i.e. first day of the week, until **Jumatano** (= Wednesday), i.e. fifth day of the week. The system would be perfect if one went on with "Jumasita" and "Jumasaba", except that instead of those, Swahili borrowed its two last names from the Arabic : **Alhamisi** (= Thursday), i.e. "five" in Arabic (so that we have now got two "fifth" days in the week !) and **Ijumaa** (= Friday) which means the assembly (of faithful, for the Friday prayer at the mosque).

JUMAMOSI	(The 1 st day of the week)	Saturday
JUMAPILI	(The 2 nd day of the week)	Sunday
JUMATATU	(The 3 rd day of the week)	Monday
JUMANNE	(The 4 th day of the week)	Tuesday
JUMATANO	(The 5 ^t day of the week)	Wednesday
ALHAMISI	(five)	Thursday
IJUMAA	(assembly)	Friday

2. THE GREGORIAN CALENDAR :

There are two ways for naming the months in Swahili : either by giving them an ordinal number : first month, second month, etc... or by giving them their English names, with an adapted spelling.

	Mwezi wa ...	
MWEZI WA KWANZA	JANUARI	January
MWEZI WA PILI	FEBRUARI	February
MWEZI WA TATU	MACHI	March
MWEZI WA NNE	APRILI	April
MWEZI WA TANO	MEI	May
MWEZI WA SITA	JUNI	June
MWEZI WA SABA	JULAI	July
MWEZI WA NANE	AGOSTI	August
MWEZI WA TISA	SEPTEMBA	September
MWEZI WA KUMI	OKTOBA	October
MWEZI WA KUMI NA MOJA	NOVEMBA	November
MWEZI WA KUMI NA MBILI	DESEMBA	December



Chapter 25 - The U- Gender

The **U-** gender is actually composed of 2 distinct classes of nouns, that jointly share the nominal prefix **U-** in the singular. This gender has no specific plural.

These 2 classes are :

- Class 11, that contains nouns of concrete objects that make their plural in class 10, and more rarely in class 6.
- Classe 14, that countains abstract singular nouns.

1. NOUNS IN CLASS 11 :

a) Concrete nouns with various plurals :



SINGULIER	PLURIEL	Classe	Traduction
Ua	maua	Cl 6	a flower, flowers
Ua	nyua	Cl 10	a courtyard, courtyards
Ubao	bao	Cl 10	a board, boards
Udevu	ndevu	Cl 10	a hair of beard, a beard
Ufa	nyufa	Cl 10	a crack, cracks
Ufunguo	funguo	Cl 10	a key, keys
Ugomvi	magomvi	Cl 6	a quarrel, quarrels
Ugonjwa	magonjwa	Cl 6	a disease, diseases
Ukoo	koo	Cl 10	a clan, clans
Ukuta	kuta	Cl 10	a wall, walls
Ulimi	ndimi	Cl 10	the tongue, tongues
Uma	nyuma	Cl 10	a fork, forks
Unywele	nywele	Cl 10	a hair, the hair
Upande	pande	Cl 10	a side, sides

Upanga	panga	CI 10	a machete, machetes
Upepo	pepo	CI 10	wind, bad spirits
Usiku	siku	CI 10	the night, the day
Uso	nyuso	CI 10	a face, faces
Utambi	tambi	CI 10	a wick, wicks
Uvumbi	vumbi	CI 10	a grain of dust, dust
Uzi	nyuzi	CI 10	a thread, threads
Wakati	nyakati	CI 10	time, times
Wembe	nyembe	CI 10	a razor blade, razor blades
Wimbo	nyimbo	CI 10	a song, songs

b) uncountable nouns, without plural :

NOUN	Translation
Udongo	the soil, the ground
Ugali	maize paste
Uji	porridge
Ukimwi	AIDS
Ulimwengu	the world
Umeme	electricity
Umri	age
Unga	flour
Usingizi	sleep
Uwongo	a lie
Wino	ink

2. NOUNS IN CLASS 14 :

Most of them are formed from an adjectival, nominal or verbal root.

a) Adjectival root :

ADJECTIVE	Translation	NOUN	Translation
-baya	bad	Ubaya	maliciousness

-chafu	dirty	Uchafu	dirtiness
huru	free	Uhuru	freedom
-jinga	stupid	Ujinga	stupidity
-moja	one	Umoja	unity
-refu	long	Urefu	length
safi	clean	Usafi	cleanliness
-sawa	equal	Usawa	equality
-tajiri	rich, wealthy	Utajiri	wealth
-vivu	lazy	Uvivu	laziness
-zuri	beautiful	Uzuri	beauty

b) Nominal root :

NOUN	Translation	NOUN	Translation
Jamaa	a group of people	Ujamaa	a community
Kijana	a young person	Ujana	youth
Maskini	a poor	Umaskini	poverty
Mchawi	a witch	Uchawi	witchcraft
Mfalme	a king	Ufalme	a kingdom
Mtoto	a child	Utoto	childhood
Mzee	an old man	Uzee	old age

c) Verbal root :

VERB	Translation	NOUN	Translation
Kuiba	to steal	Uwizi	theft
Kukosa	to miss	Ukosefu	lack
Kula	to eat	Wali	cooked rice
Kupenda	to love, to like	Upendo	love
Kuweza	to be able	Uwezo	capacity
Kusahau	to forget	Usahaulifu	forgetfulness

d) Names of countries :

NAME OF COUNTRY	Translation
Ufaransa	France
Uganda	Uganda
Uhabeshi	Ethiopia
Uhindi	India
Uingereza	England
Ujerumani	Germany
Ulaya	Europe
Unguja	Isle of Zanzibar
Ureno	Portugal
Urusi	Russia
Usukuma	Sukumaland

3. CLASS AGREEMENTS OF THE ADJECTIVE :

In the singular, the adjective agrees with the noun by taking the class 3 singular prefix **M-**.

In the plural, the adjective usually agrees with the noun by taking the class 10 prefix **N-** or **Ø-**, or more rarely the class 6 prefix **MA-**.

	Singular		Plural
Ukuta mrefu	a high wall	Kuta ndefu	high walls
Uzi mweupe	a white thread	Nyuzi mweupe	white threads
Upande mmoja	one side	Pande mbili	two sides
Ufunguo mwingine	another key	Funguo nyingine	other keys
Ugomvi mkali	a severe quarrel	Magomvi makali	severe quarrels

NOTE :

The names of countries that start with the prefix **U-** behave like the names of countries of the **N-** gender : **Tanzania, Kenya, Misri** (= Egypt), etc. and take class 9 agreements with the verbs, adjectives, possessives and demonstratives.

TANZANIAN SLOGAN :

Uhuru ni Kazi

MOTTO OF TANZANIA :**UHURU NA UMOJA****VOCABULARY**

Ubishi	a quarrel	Upana	width
Uchache	scarcity	Ushi, nyushi	an eyebrow
Ufagio, fagio	a broom, a brush	Ushirika	a cooperative
Ukuni, kuni	firewood	Uta, nyuta	an arc
Ukurasa, kurasa	a page	Wema	kindness
Unono	wellbeing, comfort	Wivu	jealousy

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

- A key, a board, a side, a tongue, the face, dust, a song, porridge, time, a beard, the hair, firewood, machetes, dust, wicks, diseases, sleep, ink, electricity, the ground.
- Freedom, beauty, unity, cleanliness, dirtiness, childhood, old age, lack, love, capacity, forgetfulness, poverty, wealth, the length, stupidity, France, England, Germany, the Isle of Zanzibar, Portugal.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

Ufagio mdogo, ukuta mrefu, uso mzuri, kuni nyingi, uzi mweusi, pande mbili, ufunguo mpya, magonjwa makubwa, ulimi mchafu, nyuma safi, wimbo mzuri, nywele nyeusi, udongo mzuri, wino mwekundu, unga mzuri, upendo mkubwa, nyembe kali, mbao nzito, ndevu ndefu, usiku

mweusi.

EXERCISE 3 : Translate into English :

1. Taa hizi mbili zataka tamba mpya.
2. Mbao hizi ndefu mno.
3. Vibarua wanahitaji panga tatu na fagio nne.
4. Nipike nini leo : Wali au ugali ?
5. Uji huu mzuri sana.
6. Msichana huyu ana nywele ndefu nyeusi.
7. Nimepotea funguo zangu : siwezi kufungua mlango !
8. Wakati huu kuna upepo mkali kabisa.
9. Mzee yule amelala usingizi uani.
10. Kuni zote zimekwisha. Lete nyingine !
11. Mwalimu anatumia ubao mweusi shuleni.
12. Lete nyuma, visu na vijiko mezani.
13. Ana ugomvi mkali na jamaa zake.
14. Duka la ushirika linauza unga wa ngano.
15. Tanganyika imepata uhuru wake mwaka wa elfu moja mia tisa sitini na moja.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 26 - Place

1. THE LOCATIVE SUFFIX :

There exists in Swahili a very convenient way to translate "inside", "in", "on" or "at" : in order to do this, we simply add the suffix **-NI** at the end of a noun.

EXAMPLES :

Bahari	= the sea	-> Bahari-ni	= on the sea / at sea
Bandari	= the harbour	-> Bandari-ni	= in the harbour
Meza	= the table	-> Meza-ni	= on the table
Njia	= the way	-> Njia-ni	= on the way
Nyumba	= the house	-> Nyumba-ni	= in the house / at home
Shamba	= the farm	-> Shamba-ni	= at the farm / in the country
Shule	= the school	-> Shule-ni	= at school

This system has also given proper names of districts or villages :

Bwawa	= marsh	-> Bwawa-ni	= on the marshes
Daraja	= bridge	-> Daraja-ni	= by the bridge
Forodha	= customs	-> Forodha-ni	= at the customs
Mgomba	= banana tree	-> Mgomba-ni	= where there is a banana tree
Mkunazi	= jujub tree	-> Mkunazi-ni	= where there is a jujub tree
Msasa	= rough plant	-> Msasa-ni	= where there are rough plants
Mto	= river	-> Mto-ni	= by the river

However, proper names of cities and countries, as well as some common place nouns (**Posta** = the post-office, **Bara** = a continent, **Markiti** = a market) do not take that suffix, thus :

Nakwenda Dodoma	I go to Dodoma	<i>(I go Dodoma)</i>
Wamefika Zanzibar	They arrived in Zanzibar	<i>(They have arrived Zanzibar)</i>
Wazazi wangu wanakaa Iringa	My parents live in Iringa	<i>(My parents live Iringa)</i>
Yuko Posta	He is at the post-office	<i>(He is post-office)</i>

2. Where ? :

To ask : "where ?", we use the interrogative adverb : **WAPI ?**

(See : [Chapter 21 - Interrogative Words](#).)

Unakwenda wapi ?

Where do you go ?

Mbeya iko wapi ?

Where is Mbeya ?

3. ADVERBS / PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE:

(See also : [Chapter 45 - The Connectives "PA", "MWA" and "KWA"](#).)

Baina (ya)	between
Chini (ya)	under, below
Juu (ya)	on top, above
Kando (ya)	beside, along
Karibu (na)	near, close to
Kati (ya)	between, in the middle of
Katika	in, inside, on
Katikati (ya)	among
Mbali (na)	far, far from
Mbele (ya)	in front of
Miongoni mwa	among
Ndani (ya)	in, inside
Ng'ambo (ya)	on the other side of
Nje (ya)	outside
Nyuma (ya)	behind
Toka / Kutoka	from

EXAMPLES :

Chagua kimoja baina ya vitu hivi	Choose one of these things
Paka amelala chini ya kitanda	The cat is sleeping under the bed
Weka kikapu juu ya kiti	Put the basket on the chair
Wanafuata mfereji kando ya barabara	They follow the ditch along the road
Simama karibu na moto	Stand close to the fire
Hamisi yupo kati ya Ali na Juma	Hamisi is between Ali and Juma
Panya ameingia katika shimo	The mouse has entered (<i>inside</i>) the hole
Anapanda katika mti mkubwa ule	He is climbing on that big tree
Mgonjwa ameondoka katika kitanda	The patient has left the bed

Mwembe mmoja unasimama katikati ya ua
Usiende mbali na nyumba
Walimu wameketi mbele ya wanafunzi
Miongoni mwa watoto, mmoja anasimama
Ninasafiri mpaka Mwanza
Kuna vitu mbalimbali ndani ya sanduku
Siwezi kufika ng'ambo ya mto ule
Alipata mkate toka / kutoka mjini

A mango tree stands in the middle of the courtyard
 Don't go far from the house
 The teachers are sitting in front of the pupils
 Among the children, one is standing
 I'm travelling up to Mbeya
 There are various things inside the trunk
 I can't reach the opposite bank of that river
 He got bread from the city

4. DEMONSTRATIVES / ADVERBS OF PLACE :

They are usually placed after the noun.

There are 9 adverbs of place, which are used according to the degree of proximity and the nature of the place. These are derived from the locative prefixes **PA, KU, MU**.

	DEMONSTRATIVES / ADVERBS OF PLACE		
	PROXIMITY	DISTANCE	REFERENCE
PRECISE PLACE	HAPA = here	PALE = over there	HAPO = there
VAGUE PLACE	HUKU = around here	KULE = by over there	HUKO = there around
INTERIOR PLACE	HUMU = here inside	MLE = there inside	HUMO = inside

EXAMPLES :

Usiweke mzigo hapa. Weka mzigo pale !
Mtoto yuko wapi ? - Amekwenda kule !

Don't put the luggage here. Put the luggage over there !
 Where is the child ? - He has gone somewhere over there !

Lile joka limeingia mle shimoni.
Humu nyumbani hamkai mtu.

This large snake has entered (*inside*) the hole.
 Nobody lives in this house.

VOCABULARY

Chatu

a python

Nyani

a baboon

Chui	a leopard	Nyati / Mbogo	a buffalo
Duma	a cheetah	Paa	an impala
Fisi	a hyena	Swala	a gazelle
Mamba	a crocodile	Tai	a vulture
Ngamia	a camel	Tumbili	a monkey

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- At home, on the way, at sea, at school, at the market, on the plantation, in the bush, on the table, on the chair, in the basket, in the trunk, at work, in bed, at the door, on the veranda, by the bridge, at the customs, by the river, on the marshes, at the banana plantation.
- I go to Nairobi, they climb Mount Kilimanjaro, they are in Dar es Salaam, I have arrived in Zanzibar, they live in Iringa, the gentleman is at the post-office, where do you go ? I go to town, where do you all go ? We are going to England, he comes from Mbeya, my house is near the post-office, they live on the other bank of the river, the child is behind the tree, put the basket over there.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

- Mnakwenda wapi ? - Tunakwenda Posta.
- Wazazi wako wanakaa wapi ?
- Wanakaa mjini Zanzibar.
- Nyumba yao iko karibu na msikiti mkuu.
- Weka viazi na vitunguu katika kikapu.
- Watoto wako wapi ? - Wako shuleni.
- Mwalimu anasimama mbele ya wanafunzi.
- Kuna panya kubwa chini ya kitanda.
- Bwana yupo ? - Hayupo, anafanya safari kwenda Serengeti.
- Wageni wanakaa Hoteli ya Kati, huko Iringa.
- Kitoto ameondoka katika kitanda.
- Basi hili linakwenda mpaka Nairobi.
- Wazanzibari wapenda kutembea Forodhani jioni, kando ya bahari.
- Nyani mmoja anasimama kule, katikati ya miti.
- Angalia vizuri ! Mamba wengi wanalala huku, karibu na mto.



Chapter 27 - Emphatics

DEFINITION :

An emphatic is a word used to stress or reinforce an element in the speech. One can roughly translate the Swahili emphatic by the words "indeed" or "the very" in English.

The Swahili emphatic is a word whose root is **NDI-** and whose termination changes according to the noun to which it agrees.

1. SIMPLE EMPHATICS :

GENDERS / Classes	EMPHATICS	
	Singular	Plural
M-/WA- (Classes 1 / 2)	ndiye	ndio
M-/MI- (Classes 3 / 4)	ndio	ndiyo
JI-/MA- (Classes 5 / 6)	ndilo	ndiyo
KI-/VI- (Classes 7 / 8)	ndicho	ndivyo
N- (Classes 9 / 10)	ndiyo	ndizo
U- (Classes 11, 14 / 10)	ndio	ndizo
PA (Locative Class 16)	ndipo	
KU (Locative Class 17)	ndiko	
MU (Locative Class 18)	ndimo	

EXAMPLES :

Mpishi yule ndiye hodari

That cook is indeed gifted

Hawa ndio watu walioniiba mizigo yangu

They are the very people who stole us our luggage

Huu ndio mkoba wangu

It's indeed my bag

Hicho ndicho kitu nilichokitafuta

This is the very thing I was looking for

Dawa hii ndiyo nzuri sana

This medicine is indeed very good.

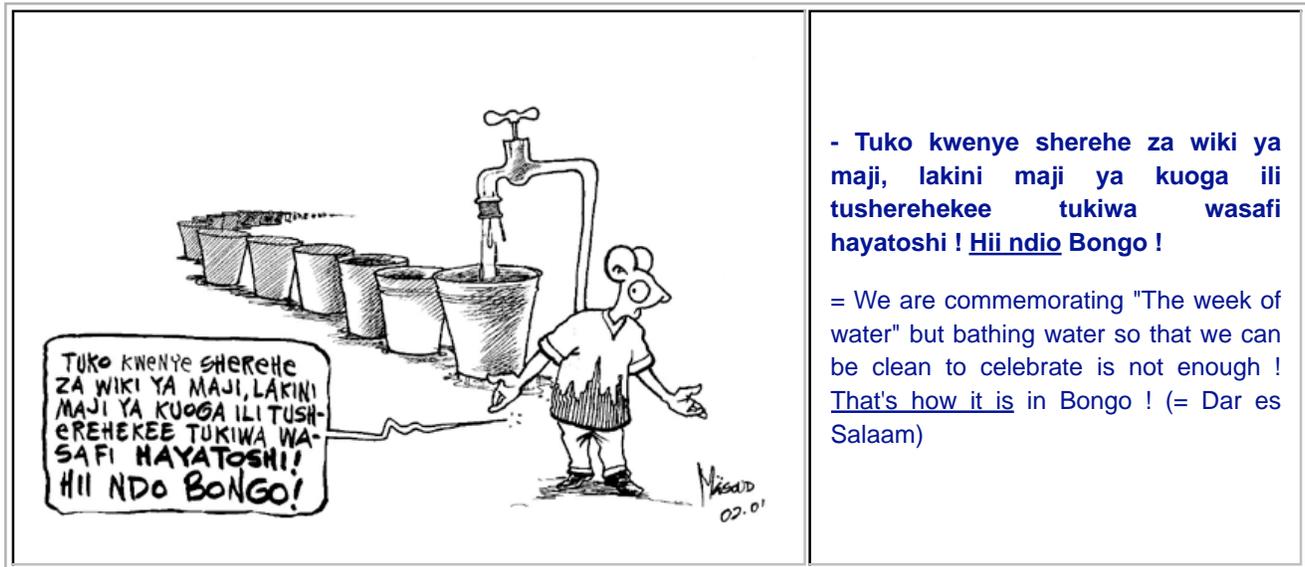
Saa moja ndipo alipofika

He arrived actually at 7 o'clock

NOTE :

One often comes across verbs with the relative (**walioniiba, nilichokitafuta, alipofika**) in

this type of speech. Several lessons will be devoted to the relative tenses further on. (See : [Chapter 52](#) et [Chapter 53](#).)



2. THE NEGATIVE FORM :

The emphatics possess a negative form. In order to achieve this, the affirmative root **NDI-** is replaced by the negative root **SI-** : it's actually the negative form of the verb **KUWA** (= to be) in the present tense.

GENDERS / Classes	EMPHATICS	
	Singular	Plural
M-/WA- (Classes 1 / 2)	siye	sio
M-/MI- (Classes 3 / 4)	sio	siyo
JI-/MA- (Classes 5 / 6)	silo	siyo
KI-/VI- (Classes 7 / 8)	sicho	sivyo
N- (Classes 9 / 10)	siyo	sizo
U- (Classes 11, 14 / 10)	sio	sizo
PA (Locative Class 16)	sipo	
KU (Locative Class 17)	siko	
MU (Locative Class 18)	simo	

EXAMPLES :

Huyu siye mtu aliyeniiba saa yangu
 Sivyo nilivyosema
 Nani alichukua fedha zangu ? - Sio mimi

This is not the person who stole me my watch
 This is not what I said
 Who took my money ? - Not me

3. EMPHATIC PRONOUNS :

The autonomous subject pronouns possess emphatic forms. The three persons singular are often contracted, the three persons plural more rarely so.

Full form	Contracted form	Translation
Ndiye mimi	Ndimi	It's me
Ndiye wewe	Ndiwe	It's you
Ndiye yeye	Ndiye	It's him / her
Ndio sisi	(Ndisi)	It's us
Ndio ninyi	(Ndinyi)	It's you (Plur)
Ndio wao	(Ndio)	It's them

EXAMPLES :

Nani atakwenda mjini ? - Ndimi Who will go to town ? - That's me
 Nani amevunja kioo hicho ? - Ndiye, Mama Who has broken this mirror ? - It's him, Mum

Emphatic pronouns in the third person singular and plural possess a contracted negative form :

Full form	Contracted form	Translation
Si yeye	Siye	It's not him / her
Si wao	Sio	It's not them

4. "NDIYO" & "SIYO" :

The emphatics **NDIYO** and **SIYO** have given the words "yes" and "no".

- Ukupata fedha zako ? - Ndiyo Bwana. You haven't got your money (*have you ?*) ? - Yes, Sir.

It should be noted that if someone answers **Ndiyo** to a negative question, he / she implicitly agrees with what has been said. In the present case, the answer **Ndiyo Bwana** means "what you say is true", i.e. : "Indeed, I didn't get it".

That would normally correspond to "No, I didn't" in English !

OTHER EXAMPLES :

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| - Ninunue mkate ? | - Ndiyo, nunua ! |
| - Should I buy bread ? | - Yes, buy some ! |
| - Ninunue mkate ? | - Siyo, usinunue ! |
| - Should I buy bread ? | - No, don't ! |
| - Nisinunue mkate ? | - Ndiyo, usinunue ! |
| - Shouldn't I buy bread ? | - Yes (<i>No</i>), don't ! |
| - Nisinunue mkate ? | - Siyo, nunua ! |
| - Shouldn't I buy bread ? ? | - No (<i>Yes</i>) buy some ! |

VOCABULARY

Ku-chinja	to kill, to sacrifice	Ku- tafuna	to chew
Ku-kataa	to refuse	Ku-ua	to kill
Ku-kubali	to agree	Ku-uma	to hurt
Ku-nawa	to wash one's hands	Ku-winda	to hunt
Ku-pumzika	to rest	Ku-zima	to extinguish
Ku-saidia	to help	Ku-zungumza	to speak

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

1. This pupil is very lazy.
2. But this one is very clever.
3. These people are indeed robbers.
4. This wine is indeed very good.
5. We do come at nine o'clock.
6. This piece of luggage is indeed mine.
7. It IS the bus to Mombasa.
8. It's the very thing I was looking for.
9. This is not the thief.

10. It's not what I said.
11. Who goes to the post-office today ? - That's me.
12. Tell me who broke that window ? - That's him.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Ninunue nyama ? - Ndiyo, nunua kilo moja.
2. Hii ndiyo nyama ya mbuzi.
3. Siyo nyama ya nguruwe.
4. Hukupata mshahara wako ? - ndiyo bwana.
5. Nani anachinja mbuzi ? - Ndiye Musa.
6. Nani aliiba mkoba wangu ? - Sio mimi.
7. Gari hili ndilo gari langu.
8. Mchuzi huu ndio mtamu sana.
9. Huyu ndiye mtu aliyenisaidia.
10. Wanafunzi hawa sio wajinga.
11. Kitabu hiki sicho nitakacho.
12. Mimi ndiye mwanao, baba. Huyu siye.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 28 - Prepositions and Conjunctions

REMINDER :

A preposition is a word that enables to locate something in space or time. In this chapter we are going to review the prepositions of time. The prepositions of place have already been studied in a previous chapter. (See : [Chapter 26 - Place](#).)

A conjunction is a word that binds 2 groups of words, or 2 clauses. For example : John and Jane ; I drink because I am thirsty ; I think that you are nice.

1. PREPOSITIONS

1. **BAADA YA** = after

Alirudi nyumbani baada ya kumaliza kazi. He returned home after finishing work.

2. **HATA** = till, until

Atakaa hapa hata kesho. He will remain here till tomorrow.

3. **KABLA (YA)** = before

Kabla hujaondoka, fungua mlango. Close the door before leaving.

4. **KISHA** = then , and then

Nenda markiti, nunua mboga, kisha rudi hapa. Go to the market, buy vegetables, then come back here.

5. **MPAKA** = till, until

Alifanya kazi mpaka saa moja ya usiku. He worked until seven in the evening.

6. **TANGU / TOKA** = from, since

Atakaa hoteli toka leo mpaka kesho kutwa. He will stay at the hotel from today till the day after tomorrow.

2. CONJUNCTIONS

1. **AMA** = or, nor

Ndivyo ama sivyo ? Yes or no ?.

2. **AMA ... AMA** = either ... or

Ama ni wewe, ama ni ndugu yako. Either it's you, or it's your brother.

3. **AU** = or

Lete mkate mweusi au mweupe. Bring brown bread or white bread.

4. **BADALA YA** = instead of

Alikwenda Arusha badala ya kwenda Dar es Salaam. He went to Arusha instead of going to Dar es Salaam.

5. **BALI** = but rather, on the contrary

Kusema kiswahili si vigumu, bali ni rahisi kabisa. Speaking Swahili is not difficult, on the contrary it's very easy.

6. **BASI** = then, well, so, that's all

Nilitaka sana kuona wanyama, basi nilifika hapa. I really wanted to see animals, so I came here.

Basi ? - Ndiyo. Is that all ? - Yes.

7. **BILA** = without

Mtoto alifika bila vitabu vyake. The child arrived without his books.

Alikwenda Tanzania bila kuona Zanzibar. He went to Tanzania without seeing Zanzibar.

8. **JAPO** = even if

Ijapo nitakufa, sitakubali. Even if I die, I won't agree.

9. **ILA** = except

Wanafunzi hawa ni hodari, ila ni huyu. These pupils are hard working, except this one.

Watu wote wamefika ila mwalimu tu. Everybody arrived, except the teacher.

10. **ILI / ILI KWAMBA** = so as, so that, in order to

Nakwenda bandari ili ninunue samaki. I go to the harbour so as to buy fish.

11. **INGAWA** = although, even though

Amefika kazini ingawa mtoto wake mgonjwa. She has come for work, even though her child is sick.

12. **JUU YA HAYO** = moreover

Chakula ni haba, juu ya hayo ni ghali mno. Food is scarce, moreover it is too expensive.

13. **KAMA** = if, around, like

Kama atakuja, nitangoja. If he must come, I'll wait.

Ninahitaji sanduku kama hili. I need a trunk like this one.

Utakaa kwa muda gani hapa ? - Kama miezi mitatu. How long will you stay ? - Around three months.

Alisema kama ndivyo hivyo. He said it was like that.

14. **KAMA KWAMBA / KANA KWAMBA** = as if

Alicheza pamoja na simba kana kwamba ni wanambuzi. He played with the lions as if they were kids.

15. **KISHA** = moreover

Mwanafunzi huyu hasomi shuleni, kisha hajui kuandika. This pupil does not work at school, moreover he cannot write.

16. **KUSUDI** = to, in order to

Amejenga nyumba kubwa kusudi kufanya hoteli. He has built a big house to make a hotel.

17. **KWA** = for, to, by, with

Anafanya kazi kwa Bwana Manji. He works for Mr Manji.

Kata nanasi kwa kisu ! Cut the pineapple with a knife.

Tulikuja hapa kwa miguu. We came here by foot.

Nitakula wali kwa mchuzi. I will eat rice with sauce.

18. **KWA AJILI YA** = because of

Kwa ajili ya kunyesha mvua, hatukuja. Because of the rain, we didn't come.

19. **KWA HIYO / KWA HIVYO / KWA VILE** = so, because of that, in consequence

Sikupata habari, kwa hiyo sikuja. I didn't get the news, so I didn't come.

20. **KWA KUWA** = because

Hatukuja kwa kuwa ilinyesha mvua. We didn't come because it rained.

21. **KWA MAANA YA** = because of

Hatukuja kwa maana ya mvua. We didn't come because of the rain.

22. **KWA SABABU (YA) / KWANI** = because

Tulikuja Tanzania kwa sababu tulitaka kupanda mlima wa Kilimanjaro. We came to Tanzania because we wanted to climb Mount Kilimanjaro.

Angalia vizuri kabla ya kupita mto kwani kuna viboko wengi. Watch carefully before crossing the river because there are many hippos.

23. **KWAMBA / KUWA** = that

Mpishi anasema kwamba baba yake amekufa. The cook says his / her father has died.

Ninaona kwamba mnyama huyu ni mkali. I see that this animal is savage.

Barua yake yasema kuwa ni mgonjwa. His / her letter says that he / she is sick.

24. **LAKINI / WALAKINI** = but, however

Ninasoma kiswahili, lakini sielewi kitu. I learn Swahili, but I don't understand anything.

25. **NA** = and, with

Lete kuku na wali na mboga mbali mbali. Bring chicken and rice and different vegetables.

26. **PAMOJA (NA)** = with, together with

Rafiki yangu amekuja pamoja na watoto wake. My friend has arrived with his / her children.

27. **PAMOJA NA HAYO / JUU YA HAYO / ZAIDI YA HAYO** = moreover, besides

Hana tiketi yake, zaidi ya hayo hana fedha. He / she hasn't got his / her ticket, besides he / she has no money.

28. **TENA (NA)** = again, moreover

Sijui mtoto huyu, tena sijamwona. I don't know this child, moreover I have never seen him.

29. **WALA** = either, neither

Hakuna mchele wala (hakuna) unga. There is no rice and no flour either.

30. **WALA ... WALA** = neither ... nor

Sikuwaona, wala yeye wala ndugu zake. I didn't see them, neither him nor his brothers.

31. **YAANI** = i.e., that is to say

Hili ndilo neno la kigeni, yaani kiingereza. This is indeed a foreign word, that is, English.

VOCABULARY

Adui, ma-	an enemy	Malaika	an angel
Bakuli	a vessel	Panga, ma-	a machete
Binamu	a cousin	Pepo	a spirit
Bunduki	a gun, a rifle	Raia	a citizen
Kofia	a hat	Taa	a lamp
Ndoo	a pail, a bucket	Yaya	a nanny

Cross Word Puzzle

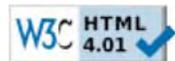
EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

1. These people have neither cows nor goats.
2. He came yesterday, but he has already left.
3. The child is crying because he is lost.
4. Even though the food is good, the child did not eat it.
5. He hurries in order to arrive first.
6. I have no money, so I can't buy anything.
7. He says he is coming back tomorrow.
8. Don't you know that your grandfather is in hospital ?
9. You work like an ass.
10. We arrived at the school by foot.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Neno hili si kweli, bali ni uongo kabisa.
2. Analia kwa sababu mama yake mgonjwa.
3. Ninahitaji viatu vipya lakini sina fedha.
4. Mwalimu anasema kwamba atachelewa kidogo.
5. Ninakuja markiti mapema ili nipate nyama.
6. Lete kahawa au chai.
7. Ninakula chakula kabla ya kwenda kazini.
8. Anapumzika baada ya kurudi nyumbani.
9. Watoto wamekula wali kwa mchuzi.
10. Tunakwenda Iringa kwa basi.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 29 - Possession

1. THE CONNECTIVE PARTICLE "-A" :

The English possessive case "'s", which is often equivalent to "of" when it marks possession, is translated in Swahili by a particle whose root is **-A**. The connective particle **-A** agrees in class with the noun of the thing (or person) possessed.

Class	Connective	Example	Translation
CI 1	WA	Mwana wa baba.	Father's child.
CI 2	WA	Wana wa baba.	Father's children.
CI 3	WA	Mti wa baba.	Father's tree.
CI 4	YA	Miti ya baba.	Father's trees.
CI 5	LA	Gari la baba.	Father's car.
CI 6	YA	Magari ya baba.	Father's cars.
CI 7	CHA	Kiti cha baba.	Father's chair.
CI 8	VYA	Viti vya baba.	Father's chairs.
CI 9	YA	Nguo ya baba.	Father's garment.
CI 10	ZA	Nguo za baba.	Father's clothes.
CI 11/14	WA	Uso wa baba.	Father's face.

WORD ORDER AND EXAMPLES :

The word order in the Swahili sentence is the same as in English, when possession is conveyed by "of". The only difference is that the adjective must follow the noun it qualifies.

Mtoto mdogo wa mama.	The small child of Mother.
Mikono mikubwa ya mtoto mdogo.	The large hands of the small child.
Viatu vichafu vya mtoto.	The dirty shoes of the child.
Gari jipya la baba.	The new car of Father.

2. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS :

Possessive adjectives and pronouns agree in class with the noun of the possessed object / person. The class prefixes, identical to those of the connective particle, are affixed to the following possessive markers :

-ANGU	my	mine
-AKO	your	yours
-AKE	his, her	his, hers
-ETU	our	ours
-ENU	your	yours
-AO	their	theirs

NOTE : When the possessor is not a human being but a thing, we use the marker **-AKE**, both in singular and plural :

Nyumba na mlango wake	The house and its door
Gari na milango yake	The car and its doors
Mti na matunda yake	The tree and its fruit
Miti na matunda yake	The trees and their fruit

1. WITH NOUNS OF THE M-/WA- GENDER (Classes 1 / 2) :

Mwana wangu	my child	Wana wangu	my children
Mwana wako	your child	Wana wako	your children
Mwana wake	his / her child	Wana wake	his / her children
Mwana wetu	our child	Wana wetu	our children
Mwana wenu	your child	Wana wenu	your children
Mwana wao	their child	Wana wao	their children

2. WITH NOUNS OF THE M-/MI - GENDER (Classes 3 / 4) :

Mti wangu	my tree	Miti yangu	my trees
Mti wako	your tree	Miti yako	your trees
Mti wake	his / her tree	Miti yake	his / her trees
Mti wetu	our tree	Miti yetu	our trees
Mti wenu	your tree (plur)	Miti yenu	your trees (plur)
Mti wao	their tree	Miti yao	their trees

3. WITH NOUNS OF THE JI-/MA- GENDER (Classes 5 / 6) :
--

Gari langu	my car	Magari yangu	my cars
Gari lako	your car	Magari yako	you cars
Gari lake	his / her car	Magari yake	his / her cars
Gari letu	our car	Magari yetu	our cars
Gari lenu	your car (plur)	Magari yenu	your cars (plur)
Gari lao	their car	Magari yao	their cars

4. WITH NOUNS OF THE KI-/VI- GENDER (Classes 7 / 8) :
--

Kiti changu	my chair	Viti vyangu	my chairs
Kiti chako	your chair	Viti vyako	your chairs
Kiti chake	his / her chair	Viti vyake	his / her chairs
Kiti chetu	our chair	Viti vyetu	our chairs
Kiti chenu	your chair (plur)	Viti vyenu	your chairs (plur)
Kiti chao	their chair	Viti vyao	their chairs

5. WITH NOUNS OF THE N- GENDER (Classes 9 / 10) :
--

Nguo yangu	my garment	Nguo zangu	my clothes
Nguo yako	your garment	Nguo zako	your clothes
Nguo yake	his / her garment	Nguo zake	his / her clothes
Nguo yetu	our garment	Nguo zetu	our clothes
Nguo yenu	your garment (plur)	Nguo zenu	your clothes (plur)
Nguo yao	their garment	Nguo zao	their clothes

6. WITH NOUNS OF THE U- GENDER (Classes 11, 14 / 10) :

Uso wangu	my face	Nyuso zangu	my faces
Uso wako	your face	Nyuso zako	your faces
Uso wake	his / her face	Nyuso zake	his / her faces
Uso wetu	our face	Nyuso zetu	our faces
Uso wenu	your face	Nyuso zenu	your faces
Uso wao	their face	Nyuso zao	their faces

3. CONTRACTED FORMS : PERSON + POSSESSIVE ADJ. :

Baba yangu	-> Babangu	= my father
Baba yako	-> Babako	= your father
Baba yake	-> Babake	= his / her father
Mama yangu	-> Mamangu	= my mother
Mama yako	-> Mamako	= your mother
Mama yake	-> Mamake	= his / her mother
Mke wako	-> Mkeo	= your wife
Mke wake	-> Mkewe	= his wife
Mume wako	-> Mumeo	= your husband
Mume wake	-> Mumewe	= her husband
Mwana wangu	-> Mwanangu	= my child
Mwana wako	-> Mwanao	= your child
Mwana wake	-> Mwanawe	= his / her child
Mwenzi wangu	-> Mwenzangu	= my comrade
Mwenzi wako	-> Mwenzako / -zio	= your comrade
Mwenzi wake	-> Mwenzake / -zie	= his / her comrade
Mwenzi wetu	-> Mwenzetu	= our comrade
Mwenzi wenu	-> Mwenzenu	= your comrade (plur)
Mwenzi wao	-> Mwenzao	= their comrade
Likewise in plural :		
	-> Wenzangu	= my comrades
	-> Wenzako / -zio	= your comrades
	-> Wenzake / -zie	= his / her comrades
	-> Wenzetu	= our comrades
	-> Wenzenu	= your comrades (plur)
	-> Wenzao	= their comrades
Ndugu yako	-> Nduguyo	= your friend
Ndugu yake	-> Nduguye	= his / her friend
Ndugu zako	-> Nduguzo	= your friends
Ndugu zake	-> Nduguze	= their friends

4. TWO PARTICULAR POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES / PRONOUNS :

1. The connective particle **ZA-** linked to possessive markers conveys the meaning "away" and produces the following series of possessive pronouns :

Ninakwenda <u>ZANGU</u>	I go away
Unakwenda <u>ZAKO</u>	You go away
Anakwenda <u>ZAKE</u>	He / she goes away
Tunakwenda <u>ZETU</u>	We go away
Mnakwenda <u>ZENU</u>	You go away (plur)
Wanakwenda <u>ZAO</u>	They go away

2.

The locative particles **PA-**, **KU-**, **MU-** linked to possessive markers convey the meaning "at home" and produce the following series of possessive adjectives / pronouns :

PANGU	KWANGU	MWANGU	at my home
PAKO	KWAKO	MWAKO	at your home
PAKE	KWAKE	MWAKE	at his / her home
PETU	KWETU	MWETU	at our home
PENU	KWENU	MWENU	at your home (plur)
PAO	KWAO	MWAO	at their home

NOTE 1 :

These are the possessives we use after nouns suffixed in **-NI** (= at, in, on, by) which, in a way, have left their native noun class to join the locative classes :

Nyumbani kwangu	at my home	Nyumbani kwetu	at our home
Nyumbani kwako	at your home	Nyumbani kwenu	at your home (plur)
Nyumbani kwake	at his / her home	Nyumbani kwao	at their home

EXAMPLES :

Bwana hayumo chumbani mwake	The master is not in his room
Anarudi kisiwani kwake katika ziwa	He goes back to his island on the lac
Wamo nyumbani mwao	They are in their house
Kwenu ku wapi ?	Where is your place ?
Wamekwenda zao	They have gone away
Kwetu hakuna mahindi mengi	At our place there is not much corn
Mkoba huu ni wa nani ? - Ni wa kwangu	Whose bag is it ? - It's (of) mine

NOTE 2 :

The plural **KWAO** (= their) is most often used for a collective place (like a house, an office, etc.), even when the possessor is singular :

EXAMPLES :**Mtoto hayuko skuli, amekwenda kwao**The child is not at school, he has gone back home (*to their place*)**Maskini hana kwao**The poor man has no home (*at their's*)**Ngoja niulize ofisini kwao**Wait that I ask at his office (*at their office*)**EXERCISES**EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. Father's child, Mother's children, my mother's bag, my parents' house, the child's ball, the children's plates, my sister's utensils, my brother's garment, the pupils' food, his father's car, my mother's drugs, my comrade's face, my comrades' faces, a village of fishermen, a charcoal bag, a 4 gallon can of onions, a kilo of meat, the way to the house, the well of the village, Swahili lessons.
- b. My child, my children, my car, my house, my work, your village, your uncle, your friends, your father, your bag, your dog, her husband, his wife, her comrades, his shop, his money, our comrades, our house, our school, our city, our ministers, your country (plur), your car (plur), your children (plur), your songs (plur), your pupils (plur), their clothes, their house, their faces, their comrades.
- c. Mine (bag), mine (mother), yours (ball), mine (pupils), his (field), yours (chickens), ours (car), hers (sheets), ours (clothes), yours (village), yours (plur) (cows), theirs (hospital), theirs (crops), his (blanket), hers (cups).

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Ninakwenda zangu.
2. Mama hayumo jikoni mwake.
3. Kwenu ku wapi ?
4. Mtoto hayuko skuli, amerudi kwao.
5. Mtu huyo mkorofi amechukua mkoba wangu.
6. Kwetu kuna mahindi mengi.
7. Mkoba huo wa nani ? - Ni wa kwangu.
8. Twende zetu haraka !
9. Huyo maskini hana kwao.
10. Uko peke yako ? - Ndiyo, wenzangu wamekwenda zao.



Chapter 30 - Object Infixes

There is no autonomous pronoun object or pronoun attribute in Swahili. The same way as the pronoun subject is integrated into the verbal construction as a subject prefix, the pronoun object or pronoun attribute is inserted into the verb as an object infix. It is located right before the verbal root.

First, here are a few examples, to help understand better this phenomenon :

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. U-NA- <u>NI</u> -ONA | -> Unan <u>ni</u> ona | = you see <u>me</u> . | Pronoun object |
| 2. NA- <u>KU</u> -AMBIA | -> Naku <u>ku</u> ambia | = I tell <u>you</u> . | Pronoun attribute |
| 3. A-NA- <u>M</u> -PIGA | -> Anam <u>pi</u> ga | = he / she hits <u>him / her</u> . | Pronoun object |

Pronoun object infixes exist for all nominal classes, with a special series of infixes for the **M-/WA-** gender. They serve indifferently as pronoun object or pronoun attribute.

1. ANIMATE AND INANIMATE PRONOUN OBJECT INFIXES :

GENDER / Classes	SINGULAR	Equivalent	PLURAL	Equivalent
1	-NI-	me	-TU-	us
2	-KU-	you	-WA- ... (-NI)	you
M-/WA- (CI 1 / 2) 3	-M- / -MW-	him, her	-WA-	them
M-/MI- (CI 3 / 4)	-U-	it	-I-	them
JI-/MA- (CI 5 / 6)	-LI-	it	-YA-	them
KI-/VI- (CI 7 / 8)	-KI-	it	-VI-	them
N- (CI 9 / 10)	-I-	it	-ZI-	them
U- (CI 11, 14 / 10)	-U-	it	-ZI-	them

You may notice the risk of confusion between the object infix of the 2nd person plural and that of the 3rd person plural which are both **-WA-**.

Thus : **Nawaambia** can mean : "I tell you" or "I tell them".

To avoid this risk of confusion, we usually add the plural termination **-NI** at the end of the verb when dealing with the object infix of the 2nd person plural. The termination **-A** of Bantu verbs changes into **-E**. Another possibility is to use

the object infix of the 2nd person singular, together with the plural termination **-NI**.

EXAMPLES :

Nawaambia	= I tell <u>you</u>	Nawaambia	= I tell <u>them</u>
Nawaambieni			
Nakuambieni			
Nawaomba	= I ask <u>you</u>	Nawaomba	= I ask <u>them</u>
Nawaombeni			
Nakuombeni			

2. USE OF THE OBJECT INFIX :

The object infix replaces or reinforces, either a noun object or a noun attribute. Just as the subject prefix is present in the sentence together with the noun subject, the object infix keeps inserted in the verbal construction, even when the noun object or attribute is present in the sentence. It then reinforces that one.

EXAMPLES :

Mwite !	Call <u>him / her</u> !
Mwite daktari !	Call (<i>him / her</i>) <u>the doctor</u> !
Nipe kilo mbili za vitunguu !	Give <u>me</u> two kilos of onions !
Mwanangu yuko wapi ? - Sikumwona	Where is <u>my child</u> ? - I didn't see <u>him / her</u>
Je, umesoma kitabu hiki ? - Nilikisoma	I say, have you read <u>that book</u> ? - I have read <u>it</u>
Je, umeleta mizigo yangu ? - Ndiyo, Nimejweka chumbani mwako	I say, have you brought <u>my luggage</u> ? - Yes, I put <u>it</u> in your bedroom

3. NOTES :

1. In the IMPERATIVE, the presence of an object infix involves a modification of the final vowel **-A** into **-E**. Thus :

Nunua !	= buy !	-> Ninunue !	= buy (<i>for</i>) <u>me</u> !
Saidia !	= help !	-> Wasaidie !	= help <u>them</u> !
Angalia !	= look !	-> Zingalie !	= look at <u>them</u> !

However, verbs of Arabic origin do not change their final vowel, hence a slight risk of confusion :

Bariki !	= bless !	-> Tubariki !	= bless <u>us</u> !	(Not : let's bless !)
		-> Wabariki !	= bless <u>them</u> !	(Not : Let them bless !)

2. Swahili accepts ONLY ONE object infix in the verbal construction. Thus :

Unacho kitabu changu ? - Ndiyo, Nitakurudisha kesho.

Have you got my book ? - yes, I will give *(it)* back to you tomorrow.

In this example, the pronoun attribute **-KU-** (= you) holds the slot of the object infix, the pronoun object corresponding to "it" (= the book) is implicit. The attribute has always precedence over the object for insertion inside the verbal construction.

NOW, LEARN THE NATIONAL ANTHEM OF TANZANIA :

Mungu ibariki Afrika
wabariki viongozi wake
Hekima, umoja na amani
Hizi ni ngao zetu
Afrika na watu wake

VOCABULARY

Ku-agiza	to order	Ku-pa	to give
Ku-ambia	to tell	Ku-pokea	to receive
Ku-elewa	to understand	Ku-salimu	to greet
Ku-ita	to call	Ku-shiba	to be satisfied / satiated
Ku-kataza	to refuse, to forbid	Ku-sukuma	to push
Ku-kuta	to meet	Ku-zuia	to prevent

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

Call him ! Help me ! Look at them (the children) ! Look at them (things) ! Give me ! Tell me ! Tell us ! I saw you, He saw her, I saw you (plur), they told us, he told me, I told you, I gave it to you, he called me, I called them (the children), I read it (the book), Have you read it (the book) ? Did she take it (the book) ? Did she take them (the books) ?

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Nakuambia.
2. Sikuelewi.
3. Kisu changu kiko wapi ? - Nimekiweka mezani.
4. Mizigo yangu yako wapi ? - Yako nyumbani.
5. Nimwite nani ? - Mwite Ali !
6. Bwana yupo wapi ? - Nilimkutana kazini.
7. Nisaidie na mizigo yangu !
8. Sema polepole kwa sababu Sikuelewi !
9. Mtoto mdogo anamwogopa kaka yake.
10. Usinipe mkate wa jana. Nipe wa leo !

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 31 - The Suffix "-O" of Reference

The "-O" of reference is used in many different ways, the common denominator point between all these uses being that it always refers to a noun implicitly present in the speech.

- It helps to form the demonstrative of reference. (See : [Chapter 15](#).)
- It helps to form the emphatics of **NDIYO** and **SIYO** type. (See : [Chapter 27](#).)
- It can be affixed to the associative particle **NA** (= and, with).
- It plays the role of pronoun object with the verb **KUWA NA**.
- It can be affixed to the adjective **-INGINE** (= other).
- It constitutes the first element in the expression **-O -OTE**.
- It helps to form locative prepositions and clauses. (See : [Chapter 45](#).)
- "-O" affixed to a verb corresponds to a relative pronoun. (See : [Chapter 52](#).)

The suffix "-O" of reference agrees in class with the noun it refers to, using the series of pronominal prefixes. One exception : the suffix of reference for class 1 = **-YE**.

GENDER / Classes	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M-/WA- (Cl 1/2)		-YE	WA+O	-(W)O
M-/MI- (Cl 3/4)	U+O	-(W)O	I+O	-YO
JI-/MA- (Cl 5/6)	LI+O	-LO	YA+O	-YO
KI-/VI- (Cl 7/8)	KI+O	-CHO	VI+O	-VYO
N- (Cl 9/10)	I+O	-YO	ZI+O	-ZO
U- (Cl 11, 14 /10)	U+O	-(W)O	ZI+O	-ZO
KU- (Cl 15)	KU+O	-KO		
Locative Classes	PA+O KU+O M(U)+O	-PO -KO -MO		

1. The "-O" of reference affixed to "NA" :

The "-O" of reference clings to the particle **NA**, respecting noun class agreements.

EXAMPLES :

Wazazi wangu wanakaa mjini. Ninakaa karibu nao.	My parents live downtown. I live close to them.
Uko mpira mpya. Watoto wanacheza nao.	Here is a new ball. The children are playing with it.
Hiyo kazi nzuri. Uendelee nayo.	This is good work. Carry on with it.

2. The "-O" of reference as pronoun object :

The verb **KUWA NA** (= to have), does not accommodate the usual pronoun object infix. In this particular instance, it's the suffix **"-O"** of reference that plays the role of pronoun object. Yet, it can only be used in the affirmative.

EXAMPLES :

Una kitabu ? - Ninacho / Sina.	Have you got your book ? - I have it / I don't have it.
Punda anaye Ali ? - Anaye / Hana.	Has Ali got a donkey ? - He has got one / He hasn't any.
Hamisi anavyo vitabu vyangu. Vitabu vyangu anavyo Hamisi.	Hamisi has got my books.

3. The "-O" of reference affixed to "-INGINE" :

The adjective **-INGINE** (= other) followed by the suffix **"-O"** takes the particular meaning of "as", "like".

EXAMPLES :

Watu wengineo.	Other people like them.
Mambo mengineyo.	Other similar matters.
Vyombo vinginevyo.	Other tools like those.
Mahali penginepo.	Other similar places.

4. The "-O" of reference in the clause "-O -OTE" :

This clause means "Whoever / whatever / wherever / any / anybody / anything / ...".

EXAMPLES :

Kiasi cho chote.	Any quantity.
Ko kote uendako.	Wherever you go.
Kwa vyo vyote.	In any case.

Uliza mtu ye yote.

Ask anybody.

Siwezi kukupa (kitu) cho chote.

I can't give you anything.

VOCABULARY

aina	a species	bahasha	an envelope
akiba	a reserve, an economy	bendera	a flag
alama	a sign, a mark	bilauri	a glass
amri	an order, a command	birika	a tea pot
anwani	an address	bustani	a garden
asili	the origin	chapa	a brand (commercial)

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

1. I go with him.
2. I go with them.
3. The children are playing with her (the cat).
4. the day laborers are leaving with it (the car).
5. The travellers arrive with it (the luggage).
6. I live close to them.
7. Have you got a glass ? - I have one.
8. Have you got a tea pot ? - I don't.
9. Have your parents got a garden ? - They have one.
10. Has the hunter got a gun ? - He doesn't.
11. Let's examine similar matters.
12. They live with other people like them.
13. Take any glass.
14. Ask your way to anybody.
15. Give him anything.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Kitabu hiki ndicho nikitakacho.
2. Katika bustani yetu mna michungwa na miti mengineyo.
3. Walikuja askari na watu wengineo.
4. Nunua chapa ye yote ya mafuta.
5. Usimpe kitanda mgonjwa ye yote.
6. Mtoto ye yote anaweza kwenda shuleni.
7. Una sukari ? - Ninayo.
8. Mgonjwa ana dawa ? - Hana.
9. Sokoni kuna watu ? - Hakuna.
10. Unazo habari za mwenzetu kijijini ?
11. Humo nyumbani, kitu cho chote ni chake mwenyewe.
12. Wanafunzi wana kalamu ? - Wanazo.
13. Nyumba yako ni ipi ? - Ni hii, nayo pia ni mbovu.
14. Nataka kujenga nyingine, lakini hapana matofali yo yote.
15. Ninaweza kufanya kazi ya seremala na kazi nyinginezo.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 32 - Simple Past Tense

The Simple Past in Swahili marks a clear rupture between the present moment and the past. Like in English, it is often accompanied by precise marks of time such as : date, day, month, year, dated event, etc.. This tense is naturally translated by the Simple Past in English.

1. SIMPLE PAST - AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

The tense marker of the Simple Past affirmative is the infix **-LI-** which is placed between the affirmative subject prefix and the verbal root.

SUBJECT PREFIX + LI + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : KUFANYA = to make, to do

NI-LI-FANYA	-> nilifanya	I made
U-LI-FANYA	-> ulifanya	you made
A-LI-FANYA	-> alifanya	he / she made
TU-LI-FANYA	-> tulifanya	we made
M-LI-FANYA	-> mlifanya	you made
WA-LI-FANYA	-> walifanya	they made

CASE OF THE MONOSYLLABIC VERBS :

Monosyllabic verbs retain the **KU** of the infinitive in the Simple Past affirmative.

MODEL : KULA = to eat

NI-LI-KULA	-> nilikula	I ate
U-LI-KULA	-> ulikula	you ate
A-LI-KULA	-> alikula	he / she ate
TU-LI-KULA	-> tulikula	we ate
M-LI-KULA	-> mlikula	you ate
WA-LI-KULA	-> walikula	they ate

2. THE SIMPLE PAST - NEGATIVE FORM :

The tense marker of the Simple Past negative is the infix **-KU-** which is placed between the negative subject prefix and the verbal root.

NEGATIVE SUBJECT PREFIX + KU + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

SI-KU-FANYA	-> sikufanya	I didn't make
HU-KU-FANYA	-> hukufanya	you didn't make
HA-KU-FANYA	-> hakufanya	he / she didn't make
HATU-KU-FANYA	-> hatukufanya	we didn't make
HAM-KU-FANYA	-> hamkufanya	you didn't make
HAWA-KU-FANYA	-> hawakufanya	they didn't make

CASE OF THE MONOSYLLABIC VERBS :

Monosyllabic verbs drop the **KU** of the infinitive in the Simple Past negative.

MODEL : **KULA** = to eat

SI-KU-LA	-> sikula	I didn't eat
HU-KU-LA	-> hukula	you didn't eat
HA-KU-LA	-> hakula	he / she didn't eat
HATU-KU-LA	-> hatukula	we didn't eat
HAM-KU-LA	-> hamkula	you didn't eat
HAWA-KU-LA	-> hawakula	they didn't eat

3. SOME EXAMPLES :

Ulikuwa wapi ?

Where were you ?

Nilikuwa likizo.

I was on holiday.

Walikwenda Mombasa mwaka jana.

They went to Mombasa last year.

Mkulima alilima shamba lake mwezi uliopita.

The farmer cultivated his field last month.

Mpishi hakupata mshahara wake.
Sikufaulu mtihani wangu.
Mtoto mgonjwa hakuweza kula.

The cook didn't get his wages.
 I didn't pass my examination.
 The sick child couldn't eat.

VOCABULARY

Ku-chuma	to pick	Ku-ongeza	to increase
Ku-fyeka	to cut grass	Ku-panga	to plan
Ku-inua	to raise, to lift	Ku-poa	to cool
Ku-jaza	to fill	Ku-sitawi	to thrive, to develop
Ku-kauka	to dry	Ku-tembea	to walk, to go for a walk
Ku-ng'oa	to uproot	Ku-tunza	to care

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- I made, I wrote, I started, I hunted, I got accustomed, you planned, you wiped, you rested, he killed, he left, she arrived, she took, he refused, we raised, we helped them, we spoke, we sacrificed, you looked at, you filled, you cut the grass, you went for a walk, they cultivated, they hunted, they finished, they ate.
- He didn't make, you didn't make, he didn't eat, she did not leave, we didn't understand, we didn't ask, I didn't read, I didn't agree, I didn't rest, you couldn't, you didn't listen (plur), they didn't play, they didn't start, you didn't help (plur), they didn't come, you didn't wash your face, they didn't agree, they didn't speak, it was not sufficient, it did not hurt.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

- Niliacha, nilitafuta, niliua, aliniuliza, alikataa, aliniona, uliniita, ulishika, alizoea, tulipokea, tulichinja, tulizungumza, walitembea, walijificha, alijiuma.**
- Sikuweza, sikununua, sikusikia, hukunipa, hukusema, hukupata, hakufika, hakunawa, hatukukubali, hatukupumzika, hatukulala, hamkuzoea, haikutosha, hawakujaza, hawakufyeka.**

EXERCISE 3 : Translate into English :

1. Tulikwenda Mikumi wiki iliyopita.
2. Tuliona wanyama wengi pale.
3. Lakini hatukuona kifaru wala kiboko.
4. Je, ulipata kuona kikundi cha simba ?
5. Ndiyo, niliona simba dume mmoja na simba jike wanne.
6. Je, mtoto alikula chakula chake asubuhi ?
7. La, hakula kitu, ila ni mkate mdogo tu.
8. Umeshakwenda kisiwani mwa Zanzibar ?
9. Ndiyo, nilisafiri kule mwaka jana.
10. Nilitembea sehemu nyingi mjini, kama markiti na forodhani.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 33 - The Subjunctive

Unlike in English, the Subjunctive is very widely used in Swahili, after words of obligation, advice, suggestion, prohibition, etc. or after a first verb expressing will or not, where English commonly uses an infinitive.

1. AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

There is no tense marker in the Subjunctive. The subject prefix is directly followed by the verbal root. The ending **-A** of verbs of Bantu origin changes into **-E**, while verbs of Arabic origin ending in **-I**, **-E**, **-U** do not change. Monosyllabic verbs drop the **KU-** of the infinitive.

SUBJECT PREFIX + VERB RADICAL - E

MODEL 1 (Verbs of Bantu origin) : KUSOMA = to read, to study

NI-SOME	-> nisome	<i>that I read</i>
U-SOME	-> usome	<i>that you read</i>
A-SOME	-> asome	<i>that he / she read</i>
TU-SOME	-> tusome	<i>that we read</i>
M-SOME	-> msome	<i>that you read</i>
WA-SOME	-> wasome	<i>that they read</i>

MODEL 2 (Verbs of Arabic origin) : KUJARIBU = to try

NI-JARIBU	-> njaribu	<i>that I try</i>
U-JARIBU	-> ujaribu	<i>that you try</i>
A-JARIBU	-> ajaribu	<i>that he / she try</i>
TU-JARIBU	-> tujaribu	<i>that we try</i>
M-JARIBU	-> mjaribu	<i>that you try</i>
WA-JARIBU	-> wajaribu	<i>that they try</i>

MODEL 3 (Monosyllabic verbs) : KUJA = to come

NI-JE	-> nije	<i>that I come</i>
U-JE	-> uje	<i>that you come</i>
A-JE	-> aje	<i>that he / she come</i>
TU-JE	-> tuje	<i>that we come</i>
M-JE	-> mje	<i>that you come</i>
WA-JE	-> waje	<i>that they come</i>

2. NEGATIVE FORM :

The negative infix **SI** is inserted between the subject prefix and the verbal root. This negative infix replaces the negative pre-prefix commonly used in the negative forms of other tenses.

SUBJECT PREFIX + SI + VERB RADICAL - E

MODEL : KUSOMA = to read, to study

NI-SI-SOME	-> nisisome	<i>that I don't read</i>
U-SI-SOME	-> usisome	<i>that you don't read</i>
A-SI-SOME	-> asisome	<i>that he / she don't read</i>
TU-SI-SOME	-> tusisome	<i>that we don't read</i>
M-SI-SOME	-> msisome	<i>that you don't read</i>
WA-SI-SOME	-> wasisome	<i>that they don't read</i>

As in the affirmative form, verbs of Arabic origin preserve their final vowel :

Ku-fikiri	-> NI-SI-FIKIRI	<i>that I don't think</i>
Ku-jibu	-> WA-SI-JIBU	<i>that they don't answer</i>
Ku-samehe	-> U-SI-SAMEHE	<i>that you don't forgive</i>

Monosyllabic verbs drop the **KU-** of the infinitive :

Kw-enda	-> A-SI-ENDE	<i>that he / she don't go</i>
Ku-ja	-> WA-SI-JE	<i>that they don't come</i>
Ku-wa	-> U-SI-WE	<i>that you don't be</i>

3. DIFFERENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE :

1. The Polite Imperative :

(See : [Chapter 4 : The Polite Imperative.](#))

EXAMPLES :

Tafadhali unisaidie !	Please, help me !
Mjaribu kusema kiswahili !	Try (plur.) to speak Swahili !

2. The Imperative of the 1st person plural :

(See : [Chapter 4 : The Imperative of the 1st person plural.](#))

EXAMPLES :

Twende kazini !	Let's go to work !
Tujenge taifa letu !	Let's build our nation !
Tusifanye fujo !	Don't let's make disorder !

3. Expressing a suggestion, a wish, a request :

It is used for all persons except the 2nd person singular and plural.

EXAMPLES :

Tujifunze kwa bidii.	Let's learn with energy.
Mambo haya yaishe !	Let these matters cease !

4. Asking for advice or approval :

EXAMPLES :

Nikusaidie ?	May I help you ?
Aende wapi ?	Where should he go ?
Nimwambie nini ?	What shall I tell him ?

5. 2nd verb in an imperative sentence, or in indirect speech :EXAMPLES :**Njoo ule !**

Come and eat !

Pokea barua yako uisome !

Receive your letter and read it !

Mwambie aje kesho !

Tell him to come tomorrow !

6. After expressions of obligation or necessity :

EXPRESSIONS OF OBLIGATION :

Afadhali	(you) had better	Sharti	(you) must
Bora	(you) had rather	Yafaa	it's appropriate to
Heri	it's preferable to	Ya---bidi	(you) must
Lazima	(you) must	Ya---pasa	(you) have to

EXAMPLES :**Afadhali utusaidie !**

Please help us !

Bora tuamke mapema !

We had rather wake up early !

Heri waende nyumbani !

They should go back home !

Lazima uende hospitali.

You must go to hospital.

Sharti tukamate mwizi huu.

We have to catch this thief.

Yafaa uanze kwanza.

It's appropriate that you start first.

Yatubidi tumjulishe habari hizi.

We must tell him this news.

Yawapasa wahudhurie mkutano.

They have to attend the meeting.

7. Expressing purpose or intention :

Ili	so that	Kusudi	in order to
------------	---------	---------------	-------------

EXAMPLES :**Alinisaidia ili nimalize kazi mapema.**

He helped me so that I finish work early.

Twafuga kuku ili tupate mayai.

We breed hens in order to get eggs.

Alikaribia kusudi aweze kuona vizuri.

He came nearer to see better.

8. Subordinate clause :

After the following verbs :

Ku-amuru	to order	Ku-omba	to ask, to beg
Ku-acha	to leave, to allow	Ku-penda	to like, to wish
Ku-fanya	to make	Ku-shauri	to advise
Ku-kubali	to agree	Ku-taka	to want

EXAMPLES :

Aliwaamuru wamrudishie mali yake.	He ordered them to return him his property.
Umwache aende zake.	Let him go away.
Walinfanya nikate tamaa.	They made me loose heart.
Walikubali tufunge mapema.	They accepted that we close early.
Namwomba aje.	I ask him to come.
Wapenda twende wapi ?	Where do you want us to go ?
Nakushauri urudi nyumbani.	I advise you to go back home.
Sitaki awe na mawazo haya.	I don't want him to have such ideas.

9. **After some prepositions :**After the following prepositions :

Hadi	till, until	Tangu	from, since
Hata	till, until	Karibu	nearly, almost
Mpaka	till, until		

EXAMPLES :

Atumie dawa hii hadi apone.	She must use this drug until she is cured.
Utanisumbua hata nikasirike ?	Will you annoy me until I get cross ?
Ngoja mpaka arudi.	Wait till he / she comes back.
Karibu tuondoke.	We are about to leave.
Tangu tufike hatujapata chai.	We haven't got tea since we arrived.

10. **Negative Subjunctive after verbs of restriction or prohibition :**After the following verbs :

Ku-kanya	to forbid, to prevent	Ku-onya	to inform
Ku-kataza	to refuse	Ku-zuia	to prevent, to forbid
Ku-linda	to protect		

EXAMPLES :

Wakanyeni watoto wasigombane.	Prevent the children from quarrelling.
--------------------------------------	--

Wazazi wamemkataza asiolewe mwaka huu.
Chakula bora chatulinda tusipatwe na magonjwa.
Nakuonya usirudie kosa lile.
Askari alinizuia nisipite.

Her parents refused her to marry this year.
 Better food protects us from catching diseases.
 I warn you not to repeat this mistake.
 A soldier forbid me to pass.

11.

Fruitless effort :

EXAMPLES :

Walimtafuta wasimwone.
Nilijaribu kufungua mlango huu nisiweze.
Tulisafiri kwa haraka tulivyoweza tusifike Arusha mapema.

They sought him but didn't find him.
 I tried to open this door but I failed.
 We travelled as quickly as possible but we failed to arrive early in Arusha.



Chakubanga

- **Ni lazima tufanye 'plakatisi' kali, na tukikosa kombe la ulimwengu, basi hata la ahera tusilikose.**
- **Labda wasituchague !**
- **We have to 'practice' hard, and if we miss the world cup, then we shouldn't miss the regional.**
- **Maybe they won't choose us !**

NOW, LEARN THE NATIONAL ANTHEM OF KENYA :

**Ee Mungu nguvu yetu
 Ilete baraka kwetu
 Haki iwe ngao na mlinzi
 Na tukae na udugu**

**Amani na uhuru
Raha tupate na ustawi**

VOCABULARY

Baiskeli	a bicycle	Petroli	petrol, gasoline
Benki	a bank	Picha	a photo, a picture
Hoteli	a hotel, a restaurant	Polisi	the police
Jela	a prison, a jail	Sigara	a cigarette
Kampuni	a company	Sinema	a cinema
Oili	motor oil	Shati	a shirt

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. [That] I plan, I understand, I give up, you thrive, you breed, you fill, he be satiated, he receive, he increase, we take a walk, we refuse, you prevent, you wipe, they meet, they call.
- b. [That] I don't ask, I don't know, you don't say, you don't meet, he don't push, he don't leave, she don't catch, we don't call, we don't make, you don't read (plur), you don't come (plur), they don't answer, they don't think, they don't leave, they don't see.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into Swahili :

1. Should he come in?
2. When shall we leave ?
3. Should the cook buy meat ?
4. Must I close the door ?
5. Come and see !
6. Tell Hamisi to go to the market.

7. Tell the cook to do the cooking.
8. He must go.
9. She went to the market to buy vegetables.
10. I study this book to learn Swahili.

EXERCISE 3 : Translate into English :

1. Watoto wacheze mpira leo ? - Ndiyo, wacheze.
2. Wanafunzi waende zao ? - Wasiende bado.
3. Mwambie Hamisi anipe cheti chake.
4. Mwombe mkurugenzi atupe jibu.
5. Lazima wanafunzi wachukue kuni kwa kupika chakula.
6. Ukitaka dawa, sharti uje na chupa.
7. Twende pwani sasa ili tupumzike.
8. Tulikuja Tanzania ili tuone wanyama.
9. Askari polisi walizuia watu wasiingie katika benki.
10. Mama amemkataza mtoto asiende sinema.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 34 - Future Tense

The tense marker of the FUTURE is the infix **-TA-**.

1. FUTURE - AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

The tense marker **-TA-** is inserted between the subject prefix, identical to that of the present, and the verbal root :

SUBJECT PREFIX + TA + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

NI-TA-FANYA	-> nitafanya	I will make
U-TA-FANYA	-> utafanya	you will make
A-TA-FANYA	-> atafanya	he / she will make
TU-TA-FANYA	-> tutafanya	we will make
M-TA-FANYA	-> mtafanya	you will make
WA-TA-FANYA	-> watafanya	they will make

CASE OF THE MONOSYLLABIC VERBS :

Monosyllabic verbs retain the **KU-** of the infinitive in the Future affirmative.

MODEL : **KULA** = to eat

NI-TA-KULA	-> nitakula	I will eat
U-TA-KULA	-> utakula	you will eat
A-TA-KULA	-> atakula	he / she will eat
TU-TA-KULA	-> tutakula	we will eat
M-TA-KULA	-> mtakula	you will eat
WA-TA-KULA	-> watakula	they will eat

2. FUTURE - NEGATIVE FORM :

The tense marker **-TA-** is inserted between the negative subject prefix, identical to that of the present, and the verbal root :

NEGATIVE SUBJECT PREFIX + TA + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

SI-TA-FANYA	-> sitafanya	I won't make
HU-TA-FANYA	-> hutafanya	you won't make
HA-TA-FANYA	-> hatafanya	he / she won't make
HATU-TA-FANYA	-> hatutafanya	we won't make
HAM-TA-FANYA	-> hamtafanya	you won't make
HAWA-TA-FANYA	-> hawatafanya	they won't make

CASE OF THE MONOSYLLABIC VERBS :

Monosyllabic verbs retain the **KU-** of the infinitive in the Future negative.

MODEL : **KULA** = to eat

SI-TA-KULA	-> sitakula	I won't eat
HU-TA-KULA	-> hutakula	you won't eat
HA-TA-KULA	-> hatakula	he / she won't eat
HATU-TA-KULA	-> hatutakula	we won't eat
HAM-TA-KULA	-> hamtakula	you won't eat
HAWA-TA-KULA	-> hawatakula	they won't eat

VOCABULARY

Buibui	a spider	Nyuki	a bee
Inzi	a fly	Nyungunyungu	a worm
Kupe	a tick	Nzige	a locust

Mbung'o	a tsetse fly	Siafu	a soldier ant
Mchwa	a termit	Sisimizi	a small ant
Nge	a scorpion	Tandu	a centipede

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- I'll see, I'll make, I'll continue, I'll wash, you'll make, you'll take, you'll write, you'll rest, he'll come, he'll explain, he'll read, he'll learn, we will overcome, we will go, we will walk, you will make (plur), you will understand (plur), you will sleep (plur), they will say, they will call, they will give us, you will push (plur), you will receive (plur), they will swipe, they will plan.
- I won't see, I won't come, I will not breed, you will not receive, he will not take, he won't come, she won't go, we won't travel, we won't listen, you will not take a walk (plur), you will not see (plur), they won't give you, they won't prohibit, they will not overcome, they will not understand.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

- Nitanunua nyama kesho.
- Ali atatuleta chakula.
- Hatutaweza kwenda kesho.
- Watamaliza kazi hiyo haraka.
- Tutakula chakula katika hoteli mjini.
- Mwanafunzi ataanza mtihani kesho.
- Wafaransa watapanda mlima wa kilimanjaro.
- Kijana huyo atakuwa daktari.
- Watoto wataamka kesho asubuhi.
- Wageni watatembea Zanzibar kesho kutwa.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 35 - The Reflexive Infix "-JI-"

In English, we use the reflexive pronoun "oneself" after the verb to mark that an action is reflexive, i.e. directed towards the subject of the verb.

For example : He sees himself = he looks at his own person (in a mirror, or in imagination, etc.)

In Swahili, we use a particular OBJECT INFIX : **-JI-** inserted between the tense marker and the verbal root. Unlike in English, this infix remains the same for all persons.

EXAMPLE : **KUONA** = to see -> **KUJIONA** = to feel oneself, to be proud of oneself

Ninajiona	I feel <u>myself</u>
Unajiona	you feel <u>yourself</u>
Anajiona	he / she feels <u>himself / herself</u>
Tunajiona	we feel <u>ourselves</u>
Mnajiona	you feel <u>yourselves</u>
Wanajiona	they feel <u>themselves</u>

The reflexive can be used in all tenses, including the infinitive, both in the affirmative and negative forms :

Infinitive :	Kujiona	to feel oneself
Negative Infinitive :	Kutojiona	not to feel oneself
Present Indefinite :	Najiona	I feel myself
Present Definite :	Ninajiona	I'm feeling myself
Present Definite Negative :	Sijioni	I'm not feeling myself
Past Perfect :	Nimejiona	I have felt myself
Past Perfect Negative :	Sijajiona	I haven't felt myself yet
Simple Past :	Nilijiona	I felt myself
Simple past Negative :	Sikujiona	I didn't feel myself
Future :	Nitajiona	I will feel myself
Future Negative :	Sitajiona	I won't feel myself
Conditional :	Ningejiona	I would feel myself
Conditional Negative :	Nisingejiona	I wouldn't feel myself
Past Conditional :	Ningalijiona	I would have felt myself
Past Conditional Negative :	Nisingalijiona	I wouldn't have felt myself

Imperative :

Jione !

Feel yourself !

Negative Imperative :

Usijione !

Don't feel yourself !

NOTE :

As will be seen in the list below, all reflexive verbs with **-JI-** in Swahili do not systematically correspond to a reflexive in English :

SOME COMMON REFLEXIVE VERBS :

Ku-jiburudisha	to refresh oneself	Ku-jisaidia	to relieve oneself
Ku-jidai	to proclaim oneself	Ku-jisifu	to praise oneself
Ku-jifanya	to claim	Ku-jitazama	to look at oneself
Ku-jificha	to hide	Ku-jitegemea	to be self-reliant
Ku-jifunza	to learn	Ku-jitolea	to volunteer
Ku-jigonga	to knock oneself	Ku-jiua	to commit suicide
Ku-jiona	to feel oneself	Ku-jiuliza	to wonder
Ku-jipamba	to adorn oneself	Ku-jiuzulu	to abdicate

VOCABULARY

Kaskazi	short rain season	Kusini	South
Kaskazini	North	Magharibi	West
Kiangazi	the hot season	Mashariki	East
Kimbunga	a cyclone, a hurricane	Masika	the rain season
Kipupue	the cold season	Ngurumo	thunder
Kusi	the dry season	Umeme	a flash of lightning

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

- a. I feel myself, he feels himself, you feel yourselves, I knocked myself, he knocked himself, I hid, he hid, we hid, I praise myself, she praises herself, I wonder, she wonders, we wonder, you volunteered, he proclaims himself, I'm self-reliant, be self-reliant ! Volunteer ! He abdicated, they learned, she adorned herself, prepare yourself ! Look at yourself ! Hide !
- b. Do not praise yourself ! Do not proclaim yourself ! Don't look at yourself ! Don't hide ! She doesn't wonder, they don't wonder, they don't proclaim themselves, I don't feel myself, I don't praise myself, you don't feel yourself, we don't feel ourselves, they don't volunteer, you didn't look at yourself, I didn't learn, he didn't commit suicide.

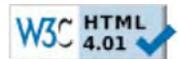
EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

Ninajifunza, anajitolea, wanajifanya, anajipamba, unajisifu, anajificha, wanajitazama, anajidai, amejiua, amejiuzulu, wanajiona, ninajiuliza, wanajiburudisha, jiulize ! Jitazame ! Tujitegemee ! Msijifiche ! Msijisifu ! Usijipambe ! Usijione ! Tujifanye ! Mjisaide ! Tujiburudishe ! Nijiburudishe ! Jiburudishe !

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 36 - Verbal Derivation

1. USE OF VERBAL DERIVATION :

It is common in Swahili to modify a verb by adding various suffixes at the end of its radical. This phenomenon is called VERBAL DERIVATION.

By way of comparison, we can in English modify the meaning of a verb by adding some prefixes or associating some prepositions to it. For example : to take, to take back, to take away, to undertake, to overtake...

This process, however common, usually modifies the lexical aspect of the verb, without modifying its function.

In Swahili, verbal derivation has for consequence to modify both the meaning and the grammatical employment of the verb in the sentence.

This will translate in English through different processes : addition of another verb (to let, to make, to be), of a reflexive pronoun, of a preposition, change of verb, etc.

We give the name of "FORM" to the various verbal derivations.

2. PRINCIPAL VERBAL DERIVATIONS :

1. The PASSIVE FORM : suffix : **-WA, -IWA, -EWA**

Example
: **KUTUMA** = to employ -> **KUTUMWA** = to be employed

2. The PREPOSITIONAL FORM : suffix : **-IA, -EA, -ILIA, -ELEA**

Example
: **KUACHA** = to leave -> **KUACHIA** = to leave for / to / with

3. The CAUSATIVE FORM : suffix : **-SA, -SHA, -ISHA, -ESHA, -ZA, -IZA, -EZA, -YA**

Example
: **KULA** = to eat -> **KULISHA** = to feed

(1) Ku-zaa to give birth	Ku-zalwa	Pass	to be born
	Ku-zalia	Prep	to bear him a child
	Ku-zaliwa	Prep+Pass	to be born
	Ku-zalisha	Caus	to deliver a woman
	Ku-zaliana	Rec	to reproduce
(2) Ku-elea to be clear for	Ku-eleza	Caus	to explain
	Ku-elewa	Pass	to grasp, to understand
	Ku-eleleza	Caus+Prep	to explain thoroughly
	Ku-elekea	Prep+Stat	to move towards
(3) Ku-fanya to make, to do	Ku-fanyika	Stat	to be made
	Ku-fanyikia	Stat+Prep	to be made for
	Ku-fanyikiwa	Stat+Prep+Pass	to thrive
	Ku-fanyiza	Caus	to make one do
(3) Ku-funga to close, to fasten	Ku-fungia	Prep	to cloe for, with
	Ku-fungwa	Pass	to be closed
	Ku-fungika	Stat	to close itself, to be closed
	Ku-fungisha	Caus	to make close
	Ku-fungua	Rev	to open, to untie
	Ku-fungana	Rec	to bind together
(4) Ku-jua to know	Ku-julisha	Caus	to inform, to let know
	Ku-juana	Rec	to know one another
	Ku-julikana	Stat	to be known
(5) Ku-ona to see	Ku-onya	Caus	to warn
	Ku-onyesha	Stat+Caus	to show
	Ku-onwa	Pass	to be seen
	Ku-onana	Rec	to see each other
	Ku-onekana	Stat	to show up, to be visible
(6) Ku-penda to like, to love	Ku-pendwa	Pass	to be liked
	ku-pendea	Prep	to like for
	ku-pendewa	Prep+Pass	to be liked for
	Ku-pendelea	Prep+Prep	to favor
	Ku-pendeleza	Caus	to make support
	Ku-pendana	Rec	to love each other
(3) Ku-piga to hit, to strike	Ku-pigia	Prep	to strike for
	Ku-pigwa	Pass	to be struck

Ku-pigika	Stat	can be struck
Ku-pigisha	Caus	to make beat
Ku-pigana	Rec	to fight

This is but a short outline on verbal derivation. The 6 next chapters will be devoted to a detailed study of these verbal forms.

VOCABULARY

Bati (ma-)	corrugated sheet	Gogo (ma-)	a log
Dau (ma-)	a dhow (boat)	Gurudumu (ma-)	a wheel
Fundo (ma-)	a knot	Jengo (ma-)	a building
Fungu (ma-)	a heap	Koleo (ma-)	a plier
Ganda (ma-)	a hull, skin (of fruit)	Kopo (ma-)	a can
Gereji (ma-)	a garage	Pipa (ma-)	a barrel, a drum

Cross Word Puzzle

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 37 - The Passive Form

It is quite common to put a verb in the passive voice in English. This is done by using the auxiliary verb "to be" followed by the lexical verb in the past participle.

Thus :	He gives	-> He is given	She takes	-> She is taken
	We beat	-> We are beaten	It closes	-> It is closed

The same result is obtained in Swahili by replacing the termination **-A** of the verb with the suffix **-WA** (or **-EWA**, **-IWA**, **-LEWA**, **-LIWA**).

1. When the verb radical ends in a consonant + **A** :

-A is replaced by the suffix **-WA** :

Kuandika	to write	-> kuandikwa	to be written
Kuanza	to start	-> Kuanzwa	to be started
Kucheza	to play	-> Kuchezwa	to be played
Kufanya	to make	-> Kufanywa	to be made
Kuficha	to hide	-> Kufichwa	to be hidden
Kufunga	to close	-> Kufungwa	to be closed
Kuiba	to steal	-> Kuibwa	to be stolen (thing)
Kukamata	to catch	-> Kukamatwa	to be caught
Kuleta	to bring	-> Kuletwa	to be brought
Kulima	to cultivate	-> Kulimwa	to be cultivated
Kulipa	to pay	-> kulipwa	to be paid
Kupata	to get	-> Kupatwa	to be got
Kupenda	to love	-> Kupendwa	to be loved
Kupika	to cook	-> Kupikwa	to be cooked
Kusoma	to read	-> Kusomwa	to be read
Kuuma	to hurt	-> Kuumwa	to be hurt, to suffer
Kuweka	to put	-> Kuwekwa	to be put
Kuwinda	to hunt	-> Kuwindwa	to be hunted

2. When the verb radical ends in the double vowel **-AA** :

-A is replaced by **-LIWA** :

Kukataa	to refuse	-> Kukataliwa	to be refused
Kuzaa	to give birth	-> Kuzaliwa	to be born

3. When the verb radical ends in the vowel sequence **-OA** :

-A is replaced by **-LEWA** :

Kung'oa	to uproot	-> Kung'olewa	to be uprooted
Kuo	to marry	-> Kuolewa	to be married (woman)
Kuondoa	to withdraw	-> Kuondolewa	to be withdrawn
Kutoa	to remove	-> Kutolewa	to be removed

4. When the verb radical ends in the vowel sequence **-UA** :

-A is replaced by **-LIWA** :

Kuchagua	to choose	-> Kuchaguliwa	to be chosen
Kufungua	to open, to untie	-> Kufunguliwa	to be opened
Kujua	to know	-> Kujuliwa	to be known

5. Verbs of Arabic origin finishing in **-I** and **-U** take the suffix **-IWA** :

Kubadili	to change	-> Kubadiliwa	to be changed
Kujibu	to answer	-> Kujibiwa	to be answered
Kukubali	to agree	-> Kukubaliwa	to be permitted

6. Verbs of Arabic origin ending in **-AU** take the suffix **-LIWA** :

Kusahau	to forget	-> Kusahuliwa	to be forgotten
----------------	-----------	----------------------	-----------------

7. Verbs of Arabic origin ending in **-E** take the suffix **-EWA** :

Kusamehe	to forgive	-> Kusamehewa	to be forgiven
-----------------	------------	----------------------	----------------

8. NOTES :

- o Some verbs already possess a passive meaning in their basic form :

Kulewa to be drunk / tipsy

- o Case of the monosyllabic verbs : suffix **-IWA** or **-EWA** :

Kula	to eat	-> Kuliwa	to be eaten
Kunywa	to drink	-> Kunywewa	to be drunk
Kupa	to give	-> Kupewa	to be given

- o Particular cases :

Kutaka	to want	-> Kutakiwa	to be wanted
Kuua	to kill	-> Kuuawa	to be killed

EXAMPLES :

Mtoto alipewa zawadi na babaye.

The child was given a gift by his father.

Chakula kililiwa na paka.

The food was eaten by the cat.

Mbuzi alichinjwa kwa kisu.

The goat was killed with a knife.

Niliambiwa kwamba Fatuma ameolewa.

I was told that Fatuma is married.

Hamisi alipigwa na mwalimu mkuu.

Hamisi was beaten by the headmaster.

VOCABULARY

Daftari	a register, a copybook	Hotuba	a sermon, a speech
Dini	religion	Idara	a department
Haja	a need	Huduma	a service, a help
Haki	justice, right	Jamhuri	the Republic
Halmashauri	an authority	Kanuni	a rule, a principle
Hekima	wisdom	Kodi	taxes

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

1. The robber has been caught.
2. The wages have been paid.
3. The fields are cultivated.
4. The child was born.
5. The luggage has been stolen.
6. The food has been brought.
7. The door has been closed.
8. My sister has married.

9. The bad pupil has been beaten.
10. The goat was sacrificed.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Chakula kimeliwa na watoto.
2. Mzungu amehibiwa na mwizi.
3. Mzigo wake umehibwa jana.
4. Kuku amekamatwa na mbwa.
5. Mtoto huyu anapendwa na watu wote.
6. Mbwa alipigwa na mwenyewe.
7. Nguo hizo zimepewa kwa watu maskini.
8. Chakula kinapikwa na wanafunzi wa shule.
9. Mnyama mmoja amekamatwa katika mtego.
10. Kijana huyu amelewa.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 38 - The Prepositional Form

The prepositional derivation has an attributive, instrumental, or locative value.

It also allows a transitive verb, i.e. a verb which has already got a complement object, to receive a 2nd complement or ATTRIBUTE. This attribute will be present as an object infix inside the verb construction, and be possibly doubled by the noun attribute which will be placed between the verb and the noun object in the sentence. Here is an example to illustrate this phenomenon :

Mama anapika chakula	Mother is cooking food
Mama anawapikia watoto chakula	Mother is cooking food <u>for the children</u>

In English, the noun attribute is introduced by a preposition (though not always), hence the term "PREPOSITIONAL" or "PREPOSITIONAL FORM" retained to describe this type of derivation. Others prefer the term "ATTRIBUTIVE".

The prepositional derivation is characterized by the addition of the suffix **-IA** or **-EA**, (or even **-LIA**, **-LEA**), at the end of the verb radical, to replace the termination **-A**.

1. SOME VERBS IN THE PREPOSITIONAL FORM :

1. When the verb radical ends in a consonant + **A** :

(a) If the vowel of the radical is **A**, **I** or **U**, the final **-A** is replaced by the suffix **-IA** :

Kuandika	to write	-> Kuandikia	to write to / for
Kuacha	to leave	-> Kuachia	to leave to / for
Kufanya	to make, to do	-> Kufanyia	to make for
Kupata	to get, to obtain	-> Kupatia	to obtain for
Kupita	to pass	-> Kupitia	to go past
Kutupa	to throw	-> Kutupia	to throw to

(b) If the vowel of the radical is **E** or **O**, the final **-A** is replaced by the suffix **-EA** :

Kuleta	to bring	-> Kuletea	to bring to / for
Kusoma	to read	-> Kusomea	to read for

2. When the verb radical ends in a sequence of two vowels :

(a) If the vowel of the radical is **A**, **I** or **U**, the final **-A** is replaced by the suffix **-LIA** :

Kuzaa	to give birth	-> Kuzalia	to bear someone a child
Kufagia	to sweep	-> Kufagilia	to sweep for
Kukimbia	to run	-> Kukimbilia	to run towards / after
Kuchagua	to choose	-> Kuchagulia	to choose for
Kuchukua	to take	-> Kuchukulia	to take for

3. (b) If the vowel of the radical is **E** or **O**, the final **-A** is replaced by the suffix **-LEA** :

Kulea	to bring up	-> Kulelea	to bring up for
Kupokea	to receive	-> Kupokelea	to receive for
Kuondoa	to withdraw	-> Kuondolea	to withdraw for / to

4. Verbs of Arabic origin ending in **-E**, **-I** and **-U** take the suffix **-IA** :

Kujibu	to answer	-> Kujibia	to answer to / for
Kurudi	to return	-> Kurudia	to return to
Kusalimu	to greet	-> Kusalimia	to give regards to
Kusamehe	to forgive	-> Kusamehea	to forgive to

5. Verbs of Arabic origin ending in **-AU**, take the suffix **-LIA** :

Kudharau	to scorn	-> Kudharaulia	to have contempt for
Kusahau	to forget	-> Kusahaulia	to forget to

6. NOTES :

- Some verbs already possess a prepositional meaning in their basic form :

Kuambia	to tell (to)
Kuingia	to enter
Kupa	to give (to)
Kuuliza	to ask (to)

- Monosyllabic verbs take the suffix **-IA** or **-EA**. Therefore they become disyllabic verbs and lose the **KU** of the infinitive when conjugated :

Kula	to eat	-> Kulia	(smth) to eat
Kunywa	to drink	-> Kunywea	(smth) to drink

- Some verbs acquire a new meaning in their prepositional form :

Kuamka	to wake up	-> Kuamkia	to greet
Kufika	to arrive	-> Kufikia	to reach

Kuhama	to emigrate	-> Kuhamia	to move in, to immigrate
Kunuka	to smell bad	-> Kunukia	to smell good
Kutenda	to treat badly	-> Kutendea	to treat well
Kutuma	to send, to employ	-> Kutumia	to use

- A number of nouns of Arabic origin can be made into verbs with the addition of a prepositional suffix :

Faida	profit	-> Kufaidia	to benefit
Huruma	pity	-> Kuhurumia	to have pity of
Huzuni	sorrow	-> Kuhuzunia	to feel sorrow for
Sherehe	feast, celebration	-> Kusherekea	to celebrate

2. PARTICULAR USES OF THE PREPOSITIONAL FORM :

1. The prepositional form used in conjunction with **MBALI** (= far) carries the idea of utter separation :

EXAMPLES :

Tupia mbali makopo haya mabaya !	Throw away these bad preserves !
Yaachilie mbali mawazo haya !	Give up these ideas !
Tulikatie mbali tawi hili !	Let's cut off this branch !
Ziondolee mbali nguo hizi !	Get rid of these clothes !

2. An infinitive verb in the prepositional form, introduced by the connective **-A**, indicates the purpose or destination of something (instrumental value) :

EXAMPLES :

Kisu cha kukatia nyama	A knife for cutting meat
Fedha za kununulia nguo	Money to buy clothes
Chumba cha kulia	The dining room
Maji ya kuogea	Water for the bath

3. DOUBLE DERIVATION :

Prepositional derivation + Passive derivation :

- 1.

<u>Basic form :</u>	Alisoma kitabu	He read the book
<u>Prepositional form :</u>	Alinisomea kitabu	He read me the book
<u>Passive form :</u>	Kitabu kilisomwa naye	The book was read by him
<u>Prep + Pass form :</u>	Mimi nilisomewa kitabu	I was read the book

2.

<u>Basic form :</u>	Nimenunua sukari	I have bought sugar
<u>Prepositional form :</u>	Nimewanunulia sukari	I have bought them sugar
<u>Passive form :</u>	Sukari imenunuliwa	The sugar has been bought
<u>Prep + Pass :</u>	Wamenunuliwa sukari	They have been bought sugar

3.

<u>Basic form :</u>	Mwizi ameiba mkoba	The thief has stolen the bag
<u>Prepositional form :</u>	Mwizi ameibia <u>mzungu</u> mkoba wake	The thief has stolen the white man his bag
<u>Passive form :</u>	Mkoba umeibwa	The bag has been stolen
<u>Prep + Pass form :</u>	Mzungu ameibiwa mkoba wake	The white man has been stolen his bag

4. SOME EXAMPLES :

Andika barua !
Mwandikie barua !
Mwandikie mamako barua !
 Fungua mlango !
Wafungulie mlango !
Wafungulie wageni mlango !
 Anasoma kitabu.
 An**amsomea** mwenzie kitabu.
 Ni**ambie** !
 Mw**ambie** !
 Mw**ambie** babako !
 Watoto walit**uimb**ia nyimbo.
 Mama alit**upiki**a chakula.
 Ninunul**ie** unga wa kupik**ia** mkate !

Write a letter !
 Write him / her a letter !
 Write your mother a letter !
 Open the door !
 Open the door for them !
 Open the door for the guests !
 He reads a book
 He reads a book to his friend.
 Tell me !
 Tell him / her !
 Tell *(it)* to your father !
 The children sang us songs.
 Mother cooked us some food.
 Buy me flour to bake bread !



Chakubanga

- Mume yangu Chakubanga ! Leo nimekupikia chakula bora, ukwaju na mapapai kwa mtindo wa kisasa.
- Kaongeze ndimu na malimau redio imesema !

- Chakubanga my husband ! today I've cooked for you new cuisine : tamarind and papaya of the day.
- Add some lemons and limes, they said in the radio !

VOCABULARY

Ku-cheka	to laugh	Ku-piga picha	to photograph
Ku-dharau	to scorn	Ku-tengeneza	to repair
Ku-jenga	to build	Ku-tia sahihi	to sign
Ku-kasirika	to get angry	Ku-tumaini	to hope
Ku-oga	to bath / bathe	Ku-vuta	to draw
Ku-piga makofi	to applaud	Ku-zunguka	to go round in circle

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Put the verbs in the prepositional form :

Kununua, kupika, kufungua, kukata, kulia, kutafuta, kutaka, kuona, kuruka, kutengeneza, kusalimu, kuimbia, kutia, kukimbia, kula, kujenga, kuhama, kupata, kushona, kuita, kudharau, kupiga picha, kuzuia, kucheka, kuoga.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Mama anawasomea watoto hadisi nzuri.
2. Nikupikie chakula ?
3. Unakitakia nini kisu hiki ?
4. Natafuta kisu cha kuchinjia mbuzi.
5. Nisalimie Baba na Mama na ndugu zangu.
6. Ndege alirukia upesi juu ya mti.
7. Fatuma amemrudia mme wake.
8. Kamba hizi kama ni za kujengea, hazitafaa.
9. Atatuharibia furaha yetu na huzuni yake.
10. Bidii yako itakufaidia siku moja.
11. Vibarua wamemlimia shamba lake.
12. Lete kamba ya kufungia mbwa.
13. Uninunulie mkate na maziwa.
14. Mtoto mdogo alimkimbilia mama wake.
15. Hamisi alimwendea daktari.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 39 - The Causative Form

This form corresponds to the English : "make someone do something". For example : make someone work, make someone build, make someone understand (explain), make someone learn (teach), make someone eat (feed), etc.

The causative derivation is characterized by the addition of the suffix : **-ISHA, -ESHA, -LISHA, -LIZA, -IZA, -EZA, -ZA** or **-SHA** at the end of the verb, replacing the termination **-A**.

1. SOME VERBS IN THE CAUSATIVE FORM :

1. When the radical ends in a consonant + **A** :

(a) If the vowel of the radical is **A, I** or **U**, the final **-A** is replaced by the suffix **-ISHA** or **-IZA** :

Kufanya	to make, to do	-> Kufanyiza	to make do
Kufika	to arrive	-> Kufikisha	to make reach
Kuhama	to move out	-> Kuhamisha	to make move out
Kula	to eat	-> Kulisha	to feed
Kusimama	to stop, to stand	-> Kusimamisha	to make stop
Kupita	to pass	-> Kupitisha	to make pass
Kuuma	to hurt (oneself)	-> Kuumiza	to hurt (someone)

(b) If the vowel of the radical is **E** or **O**, the final **-A** is replaced by the suffix **-ESHA** or **-EZA** :

Kucheka	to laugh	-> Kuchekesha	to make laugh
Kuenda	to go	-> Kuendesha	to drive
Kukopa	to borrow	-> Kukopesha	to lend
Kuoza	to rot	-> Kuozesha	to make rot, to ferment
Kupenda	to love, to like	-> Kupendeza	to please
Kuweza	to be able	-> Kuwezesha	to allow

2. When the verb radical ends in a sequence of two vowels, the final **-A** is replaced by the suffix **-ZA, -LISHA** or **-LIZA**:

Kuelea	to be clear	-> Kueleza	to explain
Kuingia	to enter	-> Kuingiza	to introduce, to let in
Kujaa	to be filled	-> Kujaza	to fill
Kupotea	to get lost	-> Kupoteza	to lose

Kupungua	to be decreased	-> Kupunguza	to decrease, to lower
Kusikia	to hear	-> Kusikiliza	to listen
Kutembea	to walk	-> Kutembeza	to take for a walk
Kuvaa	to wear	-> Kuvalisha	to dress

3. Verbs of Arabic origin take the suffix **-ISHA** :

Kurudi	to come back	-> Kurudisha	to give back
Kufurahi	to be delighted	-> Kufurahisha	to delight
Kufahamu	to know	-> Kufahamisha	to inform, to let know
Kukaribu	to be welcome	-> Kukaribisha	to welcome someone

4. Some verbs ending in **-KA** or **-TA** change their termination into **-SHA** :

Kuamka	to wake up	-> Kuamsha	to wake someone up
Kuanguka	to fall	-> Kuangusha	to make fall, to drop
Kuchemka	to boil	-> Kuchemsha	to make boil
Kuchoka	to be tired	-> Kuchokesha	to tire someone
Kupata	to get, to obtain	-> Kupasha	to make obtain
Kuwaka	to burn	-> Kuwasha	to light fire

5. Some verbs ending in **-NA** change their termination into **-NYA** :

Kuona	to see	-> Kuonya	to warn
Kupona	to get cured	-> Kuponya	to cure someone

6. NOTES :

- One case of double causative derivation :

Kuona	to see	-> Kuonya	to warn	-> Kuonyesha	to show
--------------	--------	------------------	---------	---------------------	---------

- Some verbs possess a causative meaning in their basic form :

Kufundisha	to teach
Kupasha moto	to heat

- Some nouns and adjectives of Arabic origin can be made into verbs with the addition of a causative suffix :

Bahati	luck	-> Kubahatisha	to try one's luck
Hakika	a certainty	-> Kuhakikisha	to make sure
Laini	soft, smooth	-> Kulainisha	to soften
Safi	clean	-> Kusafisha	to clean

Sawa equal
Tayari ready

-> Kusawazisha to put in order
-> Kutayarisha to prepare

2. SOME EXAMPLES :

Pasha moto chakula hiki !
Mama amelisha mtoto wake
Jifundishe (jifunze) kiswahili !
Usinimumize !
Punguza bei tafadhali !
Habari zako zinanifurahisha sana
Tuwakaribishe wageni wetu !
Nifahamishe kama u tayari !
Dawa hili litakuponya haraka
Nionyeshe njia !

Heat this food !
The mother has fed her child
Learn Swahili !
Don't hurt me !
Lower the price, please !
Your news rejoice me a lot
Let's welcome our guests !
Let me know when you're ready !
This medicine will cure you quickly
Show me the way !



Chakubanga

- Hukusikia kwenye radio kamba nauli ya UDA imeongezeka ? Wacha kupoteza muda ongeza hela !!
- Bwana-Ndugu kondakita hiyo radio haikusema ni lini huu mshahara wetu utaongezwa ?
- You didn't hear on the radio that the bus's fare has increased ? Stop wasting my time, increase the money !!
- Sir, brother conductor, this radio didn't say when our salary will be increased ?

VOCABULARY

Adabu good manners

Dhambi sin

Baraka	a blessing	Hofu	fear
Bidii	effort	Huruma	pity
Chuki	bad mood	Imani	faith
Desturi	a custom	Sifa	fame
Dharau	contempt	Siri	a secret

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- Lower the price ! Stop the car here ! Fill this basket ! Let the cat in ! Take the children for a walk ! Drive me to town ! Light the fire ! Wake up the children ! Give back the books ! Warn your father ! Prepare your luggage ! Clean the bedroom ! Don't make me laugh ! Don't hurt me ! Pass the plate !
- I teach French, the doctor cured the patient, the mother woke the children up, she lit the fire, she boiled the water, she prepared the food, my sister cleaned the dining room, my father fed the animals, I lent him money, the pupil lost his books.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

- Nieleze msomo huu.
- Rudisha vitabu vyako kesho.
- Nimepoteza mwavuli wangu.
- Nenda kulisha wanyama wale.
- Punguza bei kidogo. Bei ya mwisho ngapi ?
- Fungua masikio yako na sikiliza kwa makini !
- Hakikisha kwamba mtu asijue siri yako.
- Daktari aliponya mtoto mgonjwa.
- Nakuomba unikopeshe fedha kidogo.
- Nitakurudisha hizo mwisho wa mwezi.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 40 - The Reciprocal Form

This form represents a reciprocal or mutual action, and sometimes a collective action.

In English reciprocity is marked by expressions such as "each other" or "one another" after the verb.

For example :	to fight <u>each other</u>	We fight <u>each other</u> .
	to help <u>each other</u>	Let's help <u>each other</u> !
	to follow <u>each other</u>	They follow <u>each other</u> .

We obtain the same in Swahili by replacing the final vowel **-A** of the verb with the suffix : **-ANA**.

1. SOME VERBS IN THE RECIPROCAL FORM :

Ku-acha	to leave	-> Ku-achana	to leave each other
Ku-ambia	to tell	-> Ku-ambiana	to tell each other
Ku-amkia	to greet	-> Ku-amkiana	to greet each other
Ku-andama	to accompany	-> Ku-andamana	to follow in order
Ku-andika	to write	-> Ku-andikiana	to write each other
Ku-faa	to fit	-> Ku-fanana	to look the same
Ku-fuata	to follow	-> Ku-fuatana	to follow each other
Ku-gomba	to quarrel	-> Ku-gombana	to quarrel with one another
Ku-jua	to know	-> Ku-juana	to know each other
Ku-kosa	to miss	-> Ku-kosana	to quarrel
Ku-kuta	to meet	-> Ku-kutana	to meet one another
Ku-ngoja	to wait	-> Ku-ngojana	to wait for one another
Ku-oa	to marry someone	-> Ku-oana	to get married (together)
Ku-pata	to get	-> Ku-patana	to agree
Ku-penda	to love	-> Ku-pendana	to love each other
Ku-piga	to fight, to hit	-> Ku-pigana	to fight each other
Ku-saidia	to help	-> Ku-saidiana	to help each other
Ku-shinda	to overcome	-> Ku-shindana	to compete
Ku-sukuma	to push	-> Ku-sukumana	to push each other
Ku-ua	to kill	-> Ku-uana	to kill one another

Verbs of Arabic origin must first take the prepositional form to accommodate the suffix **-ANA** :

Ku-jibu	to answer	-> Ku-jibiana	to answer each other
Ku-rudi	to come back	-> Ku-rudiana	to return to each other
Ku-salimu	to greet	-> Ku-salimiana	to greet each other
Ku-samehe	to forgive	-> Ku-sameheana	to forgive each other
Ku-shiriki	to share	-> Ku-shirikiana	to cooperate

2. A FEW EXAMPLES :

After a reciprocal verb, "with" is translated by **NA** :

Fuatana na ndugu yako.

Accompany your brother.

Sipatani na mtu huyo.

I don't get along with that person.

Nilijuana naye zamani sana.

I knew him / her a long time ago.

Njiani nilikutana na watu wawili.

I met with two people on my way.



Shamasha

- .. We Punda kwanini usalimii **WAKUBWA** !

- .. Sikujua kama binadamu wana utamaduni wa **KUSALIMIANA** !

- .. Eh you, Donkey, why don't you greet your **ELDERS** !

- .. I didn't know that human beings used to **GREET EACH OTHER** !

VOCABULARY

Bara (ma-)	a continent	Jaribio (ma-)	an experiment
Deni (ma-)	a debt	Jeraha (ma-)	a wound
Dobi (ma-)	a launderer	Jipu (ma-)	an abscess
Eneo (ma-)	an area	Kabila (ma-)	a tribe
Figo (ma-)	a kidney	Pigo (ma-)	a blow
Ini (ma-)	the liver	Sharti (ma-)	an obligation

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

1. Tell them to wait for each other.
2. Prevent these children from fighting.
3. See you tomorrow.
4. These animals are following each other into the forest.
5. We shall wait for each other at five in the evening.
6. These people don't like each other.
7. We shall compete with you in this game.
8. They want to get along.
9. We must prevent these people from killing each other.
10. I met him on the way.
11. We saw each other in town.
12. We left each other at one o'clock.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Nilionana naye jana.
2. Watoto wanapigana uani.
3. Tumeambiana habari zote.
4. Wamepatana nasi.
5. Simba watatu walifuatana porini.
6. Wanachama wanakutana chamani.
7. Sisi na wenzetu tunashirikiana.
8. Hatukuweza kukubaliana hata kidogo.
9. Mwizi alipigana na mwenyewe wa duka.
10. Siku zafuatana.
11. Sijuani nao vyema.
12. Hapana kugombana wala kusukumana.



Chapter 41 - The Stative Form

At least to a Western mind, a verb in the stative form is rather similar in meaning to a verb in the passive form, except that it doesn't tell by who or what the action was made. It invariably implies a latent or resulting state, wherefrom the name of STATIVE, or STATIVE FORM, given to that derivation.

From a grammatical point of view, another effect of the stative derivation is to make a transitive verb become intransitive.

EXAMPLES :

<u>Passive</u>	Dirisha limevunjwa na mtoto huyu.	The window has been broken by this child.
<u>Stative</u>	Dirisha limevunjika.	The window is broken.
<u>Passive</u>	Nguo zimeharibwa na mvua.	The clothes have been ruined by the rain.
<u>Stative</u>	Nguo zimeharibika.	The clothes are ruined.

Some verbs already possess a stative meaning in their basic form, while other verbs are derived using the suffix **-KA** to produce the stative form.

1. SOME VERBS IN THE STATIVE FORM :

1. When the radical ends in a consonant :

(a) If the vowel of the radical is **A, I** or **U**, the final vowel of the verb is replaced by the suffix **-IKA**

Ku-badili	to change	-> Ku-badilika	to be changed
Ku-funga	to close	-> Ku-fungika	to be closed
Ku-haribu	to destroy	-> Ku-haribika	to be destroyed
Ku-jibu	to answer	-> Ku-jibika	to be answered
Ku-kamili	to finish	-> Ku-kamilika	to be completed, achieved
Ku-kata	to cut	-> Ku-katika	to be cut
Ku-kubali	to agree	-> Ku-kubalika	to agree together
Ku-mwaga	to pour	-> Ku-mwagika	to be poured

Ku-shutumumu	to insult	-> Ku-shutumika	to be insulted
Ku-vunja	to break	-> Ku-vunjika	to be broken

(b) If the vowel of the radical is **E** or **O**, the final vowel of the verb is replaced by the suffix **-EKA**

Ku-choma	to burn	-> Ku-chomeka	to be burned
Ku-samehe	to forgive	-> Ku-sameheka	to be forgiven
Ku-tosha	to be enough	-> Ku-tosheka	to be sufficient

2. When the verb radical ends in a vowel :

(a) If the vowel of the radical is **-A**, **-I** or **-U**, the final **-A** is replaced by **-KA** or **-LIKA**

Ku-fungua	to open	-> Ku-funguka	to open, to be opened
Ku-geua	to change	-> Ku-geuka	to be changed
Ku-pasua	to split, to saw	-> Ku-pasuka	to be split, to be sawn
Ku-pindua	to turn over	-> Ku-pinduka	to be overturned
Ku-sikia	to hear	-> Ku-sikika -> Ku-sikilika	to be heard

(b) If the vowel of the radical is **-E** or **-O**, the final **-A** is replaced by **-KA** or **-LEKA** :

Ku-ng'oa	to uproot	-> Ku-ng'oka -> Kung'oleka	to be uprooted
-----------------	-----------	---	----------------

(c) When the verb ends in **-AU**, the suffix **-LIKA** is added at the end of the verb :

Ku-sahau	to forget	-> Ku-sahaulika	to be forgotten
-----------------	-----------	------------------------	-----------------

3. Verbs in the causative form ending in **-SHA** or **-ZA** take the suffix **-IKA** or **-EKA** :

Ku-pendeza	to like	-> Ku-pendezeka	to be pleasant
Ku-pumua	to make breath	-> Ku-pumzika	to rest

4. A number of verbs can be derived from nouns, adverbs or adjectives :

Hasira	anger	-> Ku-kasirika	to be in anger
Imara	firm	-> Ku-imarika	to be firm
Shughuli	business	-> Ku-shughulika	to be busy

NOTES :

1. Some verbs with a stative meaning are not derived from any basic root. They do not necessarily end in the suffix **-KA** :

Ku-chelewa	to be late
Ku-choka	to be tired
Ku-jaa	to be filled
Ku-lewa	to be drunk
Ku-potea	to lose oneself
Ku-shiba	to be satiated
Kwisha	to be finished

2. Some verbs take a particular meaning in the stative form :

Ku-nusa	to smell out	-> Ku-nuka	to smell bad
		-> Ku-nukia	to smell good

3. Some other verbs ending in **-KA** have an active meaning. Thus :

Ku-amka	to wake up
Ku-andika	to write
Ku-anika	to spread in the sun
Ku-bandika	to stick
Ku-funika	to put a lid
Ku-pika	to cook
Ku-sikitika	to have pity

2. STATIVE VERBS EXPRESSING POTENTIALITY :

1. Many verbs already referred to above can express a potentiality. Thus :

Ku-badilika	to be changeable
Ku-chomeka	able to burn

Ku-fungika	able to be closed
Ku-funguka	able to be opened
Ku-jibika	to be answerable
Ku-kubalika	able to agree
Ku-lika	to be edible
Ku-nyweka	to be drinkable

2. Other verbs expressing a potentiality take the additional suffix **-NA** :

Ku-julikana	to be known
Ku-onekana	to be visible
Ku-patikana	to be obtained
Ku-wezekana	to be possible

3. USE OF THE STATIVE FORM :

- Verbs in the stative form are often used in the Past Perfect (tense marker **-ME-**) :

Gari langu limeharibika.	My car has a breakdown.
Kikombe kimevunjika.	The cup is broken.
Nimechoka kabisa.	I am very tired.

- Verbs expressing a potentiality are often used in the Present Definite (tense marker **-NA-**) :

Mlima wa Kilimanjaro unaonekana leo.	Mount Kilimanjaro is visible today.
Unga unapatikana madukani.	Flour is available in the shops.
Mambo hayo yanawezekana.	These things are possible.

VOCABULARY

Buni	coffee beans	Karanga	peanuts
Chaki	chalk	Karata	playing cards
Chemchemi	a source	Kokwa	a nut
Chokaa	lime	Kutu	rust

Dengu

lentils

Mbaazi

peas

Katani

sisal

Pikipiki

a motorbike

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

1. The bread is burnt.
2. The door is ruined.
3. The ditch is filled.
4. The master got angry.
5. This pipe is broken.
6. These hunters are very well known.
7. If the exam is finished, rest a little.
8. The children are sleeping because they are tired.
9. Yesterday, Juma was completely drunk.
10. Don't sit on this chair, it is broken.
11. The mountain is quite visible now.
12. He didn't succeed in closing the door because it closes badly.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Kazi hii yafanyika.
2. Kazi hii haifanyiki.
3. Machungwa haya hayaliki, bado kuiva.
4. Koti langu limepasuka.
5. Kama umeshughulika, nitarudi kesho.
6. Taa imezimika.
7. Sikuvunja kikombe hiki, kimevunjika tu.
8. Sukari hainunuliki leo.
9. Dirisha hili halifunguki.
10. Uzi wangu umekatika.
11. Leo ndizi hazipatikani sokoni.
12. Jambo hili haliwezekani.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 42 - The Reversive Form

The relative derivation concerns only a small number of verbs, for which there is a "reverse" action.

In English, the "reversive" verb is usually formed by placing a prefix such as "un-" or "dis-" in front of the verb radical.

<u>EXAMPLES</u>	to tie	-> to <u>untie</u>
	to do	-> to <u>undo</u>
	to close	-> to <u>disclose</u>

In Swahili, the reversive derivation consists in replacing the termination **-A** of the verb by the suffix **-UA** (or **-OA**, when the vowel of the radical is **O**).

1. SOME VERBS IN THE REVERSIVE FORM :

Ku-bandika	to stick	Ku-banduka	to unstick
Ku-cha	to rise (sun)	Ku-chwa	to set (sun)
Ku-choma	to prick, to bore	Ku-chomoa	to extract
Ku-fuma	to bread, to tie	Ku-fumua	to fray, to untie
Ku-fumba	to lock up	Ku-fumbua	to open
Ku-funga	to bind, to fast	Ku-fungua	to untie, to break the fast
Ku-funika	to cover	Ku-funua	to uncover
Ku-inama	to bend	Ku-inua	to raise
Ku-kunja	to fold	Ku-kunjua	to unfold
Ku-paka	to load	Ku-pakua	to unload
Ku-tata	to muddle	Ku-tatua	to disentangle
Ku-tega	to trap	Ku-tegua	to deliver from a trap
Ku-vaa	to wear	Ku-vua	to undress
Ku-ziba	to plug, to cork	Ku-zibua	to unplug, to uncork

VOCABULARY

Madaraka

responsibilities

Marufuku

a prohibition

Maelezo	an explanation	Mashindano	a competition
Magendo	smuggling	Matandiko	bed linen
Magugu	weeds	Matata	problems
Makuti	palms	Matokeo	results
Manyonya	feathers	Mavuno	a harvest

Cross Word Puzzle

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

Stick the stamp ! Put on the clothes ! Uncork the bottle ! Remove the thorn ! Uncover the pan ! unload the luggage ! Shut (your) eyes ! Open (your) hand ! Remove the hat ! Trap !

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Mwambie mpishi apakue chakula !
2. Ziba chupa hii !
3. Kumekucha.
4. Jua limekuchwa.
5. Mtoto anakunja uso.
6. Waislamu wafunga mwezi wa Ramadhani.
7. Ndege anafunua mabawa yake.
8. Jua limefunika na mawingu.
9. Bandika stempu katika barua yako kabla ya kuipeleka.
10. Kidole changu kinachoma.
11. Nimechomoa rafiki yangu shilingi mia.
12. Mkia wa nyani haumbanduki nyani.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 43 - The Formation of Nouns

You have probably now noticed that many nouns and verbs come from the same roots. For memory, let's give here some words we have already met with :

ku-sikia	to hear	-> sikio	an ear
ku-imba	to sing	-> wimbo	a song
ku-safiri	to travel	-> safari	a journey

We will review in this chapter the various devices most commonly used in Swahili to coin new nouns, and the significance of some of the prefixes and suffixes used in that process.

1. NOUNS DERIVED FROM A VERB :

1. Noun ending in -i :

1. To obtain a noun of trade or occupation, we place a classes 1/2 prefix (**M-/WA-** gender) in front of the verbal root and change the final vowel **-a** into **-i** :

ku-gomba	to contradict	-> mgomvi (wa-)	a quarrelous person
ku-lea	to raise	-> mlezi (wa-)	a children's nurse
ku-lewa	to be drunk	-> mlevi (wa-)	a drunkard
ku-linda	to guard	-> mlinzi (wa-)	a guard
ku-nunua	to buy	-> mnunuzi (wa-)	a buyer, a customer
ku-pika	to cook	-> mpishi (wa-)	a cook
ku-shona	to sew	-> mshoni (wa-)	a tailor
ku-tumika	to be employed	-> mtumishi (wa-)	a servant
ku-vua	to fish	-> mvuvi (wa-)	a fisherman
ku-zaa	to father	-> mzazi (wa-)	a parent

2. We can also place a classes 7/8 prefix (**KI-/VI-** gender) in front of the verbal root and change the final vowel **-a** into **-i** :

ku-nyoa	to shave	-> kinyozi (vi-)	a barber
ku-ongoza	to lead	-> kiongozi (vi-)	a leader

3. We can also place a classes 1/2 prefix (**M-/WA-** gender) in front of the verbal root and add the suffix **-ji** at the

end of the radical :

ku-cheza	to play	-> mchezaji (wa-)	a player
ku-chinja	to slaughter	-> mchinjaji (wa-)	a butcher
ku-chunga	to keep	-> mchungaji (wa-)	a shepherd
ku-imba	to sing	-> mwimbaji (wa-)	a singer
ku-lima	to cultivate	-> mlimaji (wa-)	a farmer
ku-sema	to speak	-> msemaji (wa-)	a speaker
ku-tazama	to watch	-> mtazamaji (wa-)	a spectator
ku-uza	to sell	-> mwuzaji (wa-)	a seller

2. Noun ending in -U :

1. We obtain abstract nouns by placing a class 14 prefix (**U-** gender) in front of the verbal root. The final vowel **-a** changes into **-u** :

ku-haribu	to destroy	-> uharibifu	destruction
ku-kosa	to miss	-> ukosefu	lack, shortage
ku-okoa	to save	-> wokovu	salvation
ku-punguka	to be reduced	-> upungufu	rarefaction
ku-sahau	to forget	-> usahaulifu	forgetfulness
ku-tulia	to be calm	-> utulivu	calm, peacefulness

2. We also obtain nouns of people by placing a classes 1/2 prefix (**M-/WA-** gender) in front of the verbal root. The final vowel **-a** changes into **-u** :

ku-amini	to believe	-> mwaminifu (wa-)	a believer, a faithful person
ku-anga	to light	-> mwangavu (wa-)	an intelligent person
ku-tukuka	to be estimated	-> mtukufu (wa-)	an estimable person
ku-tulia	to be calm	-> mtulivu (wa-)	a quiet person

3. Noun ending in -E :

The termination **-e** often indicates a person or a thing that has undergone an unspecified action. We place a class prefix in front of the verbal root and change the final vowel **-a** into **-e** :

ku-kata	to cut	-> mkate (mi-)	a loaf of bread
ku-shinda	to conquer	-> ushinde	a defeat
ku-tuma	to employ	-> mtume (wa-)	a messenger, an envoy

ku-umba	to create	-> kiumbe (vi-)	a creature
----------------	-----------	------------------------	------------

4. Noun ending in -O :

The termination **-o** is quite common. It often indicates an object or an unspecified action. We place a class prefix in front of the verbal root and change the final vowel **-a** into **-o** :

ku-azimu	to propose	-> azimio (ma-)	a declaration
ku-fungua	to open	-> ufunguo (funguo)	a key
ku-funika	to cover	-> kifuniko (vi-)	a lid
ku-ita	to call	-> mwito (mi-)	a call
ku-patana	to agree	-> mpatano (mi-)	an agreement
ku-sikia	to hear	-> sikio (ma-)	an ear
ku-sema	to say	-> msemo (mi-)	a saying
ku-soma	to read, to learn	-> msomo (mi-)	a lesson
ku-tega	to catch	-> mtego (mi-)	a trap
ku-ziba	to stop, to cork	-> kizibo (vi-)	a stopper, a cork

5. Nouns starting with the prefix N- :

Some classes 9/10 nouns (**N-** gender) are simply derived from a verb with the addition of the prefix **N-** :

ku-imba	to sing	-> nyimbo	a song
ku-ja	to come	-> njia	a way
ku-oa	to marry	-> ndoa	a marriage
ku-ota	to dream	-> ndoto	a dream

6. Derivation from a verb of Arabic origin :

Nouns formed from a verb of Arabic origin usually keep the same consonants but change their internal vowels, although some, like **msafiri (wa-)** (= a traveller) follow the Bantu pattern :

ku-abudu	to adore	-> ibadi	worship
ku-amini	to believe	-> imani	faith
ku-bariki	to bless	-> baraka	a blessing
ku-furahi	to rejoice	-> furaha	joy

ku-safiri	to travel	-> safari	a journey
ku-sali	to pray	-> sala	a pray
ku-sifu	to praise	-> sifa	a praise
ku-subiri	to wait	-> subira	patience
ku-tiba	to cure	-> tabibu	a doctor
ku-tubu	to repent	-> toba	repentance

2. NOUNS DERIVED FROM OTHER NOUNS :

1. The diminutive prefixes KI- and KIJI- :

(See : [Chapter 16.](#))

jiwe (ma-)	a stone	-> kijiwe (vi-)	a pebble
mji (mi-)	a town	-> kijiji (vi-)	a village
mlima (mi-)	a mountain	-> kilima (vi-)	a hill
mto (mi-)	a river	-> kijito (vi-)	a brook
mtoto (wa-)	a child	-> kitoto (vi-)	a toddler
mtu (wa-)	a person	-> kijitu (vi-)	a dwarf
mwana (wa-)	a child	-> kijana (vi-)	a young person
mwiko (mi-)	a ladle	-> kijiko (vi-)	a spoon
sahani	a plate	-> kisahani (vi-)	a saucer

2. The augmentative prefix JI- :

(Voir : [Chapter 13.](#))

mtu (wa-)	a person	-> jitu (ma-)	a giant
mti (mi-)	a tree	-> jiti (ma-)	a large arbre
nyoka	a snake	-> joka (ma-)	a large snake
nyumba	a house	-> jumba (ma-)	a building
nyunyi	a bird	-> juni (ma-)	a large bird

3. The collective prefix -MA :

Some classes 9/10 nouns (**N-** gender) have 2 plurals : an ordinary plural and a class 6 plural (prefix **MA-**) that represents a collectivity.

pesa	money	-> mapesa	small change
rafiki	a friend	-> marafiki	a circle of friends
samaki	a fish	-> masamaki	a school of fish
simba	a lion	-> masimba	a pride of lions

3. VERBAL DERIVATION AND NOMINAL DERIVATION :

EXAMPLES :

KWENDA = to go

VERBS	translation	NOUNS	translation
ku-enda	to go	mwendo mwenzi	a movement a companion
ku-endesha	to lead	mwendeshaji	a driver
ku-endelea	to progress	maendeleo	development

KUPENDA = to love

VERBS	translation	NOUNS	translation
ku-penda	to love	kipendo (vi-) mapenzi mpenzi (wa-) upendo	mark of affection desire, affection a lover love
ku-pendwa	to be loved	mpendwa (wa-)	a loved one, a dear
ku-pendelea	to have affection for	upendeleo	inclination, favouritism
ku-pendana	to love each other	upendano	reciprocal love

KUTUMA = to use

VERBS	translation	NOUNS	translation
ku-tuma	to use	mtume (wa-) (mi-)	un envoy a messenger un prophet
ku-tumwa	to be employed	mtumwa (wa-)	a slave

ku-tumisha	to assign a task to someone	mtumishi (wa-)	a servant
ku-tumiza	to assign a task to someone	utumizi (ma-)	usefulness employment service

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. A messenger, a believer, a drunkard, a shepherd, players, spectators, parents, a tailor, a farmer, a servant, a creature, a toddler, a driver, a lover, a leader.
- b. A declaration, an agreement, a blessing, a prayer, faith, repentance, patience, salvation, destruction, a shortage, tranquility, development, favouritism, affection, forgetfulness.
- c. A song, a way, a dream, a key, a cover, a journey, small change, a village, a pebble, a spoon, a saucer, a building, a large snake, a large bird, a pride of lions.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Waimbaji waliimba nyimbo nzuri.
2. Mlimaji analima shamba lake.
3. Wavuvi wamekwenda baharini kuvua usiku.
4. Huyu mlevi ni mgomvi sana.
5. Kuna walinzi wawili mbele ya jumba la rais.
6. Siwezi kufungua nyumba yangu kwa sababu nimepotea ufunguo wangu.
7. Kizibo cha chupa hii kiko wapi ?
8. Leo usiku, nimeota ndoto njema : nilioa mpenzi wangu.
9. Kijiji chetu hiki kinaendela vizuri.
10. Tajiri huyu ana watumishi wachache na wapishi wawili.
11. Usikose kusikiliza hotuba ya kiongozi wetu katika redio.
12. Siku hizi hatuna ukosefu wa bidhaa madukani.
13. Watamazaji watukufu, sasa mtaangalia mchezo wa mpira baina ya wachezaji wa Tanzania na Kenya.
14. Masimba wamelala msituni, kando ya barabara.
15. Rais alitumbia tujitolee kwa maendeleo ya nchi yetu.



Chapter 44 - Compound Adjectives

Genuine adjectives are quite few in Swahili. However there are various means of creating new adjectives from nouns, verbs or other words.

1. NOUNS OR VERBS PRECEDED BY THE CONNECTIVE "-A" :

One of the most common ways of creating an adjective is to have the connective **-A** precede a noun, which confers to that one an adjectival value. The connective **-A** must agree in class with the noun to which it agrees. Thus :

Maji <u>ya moto</u>	= hot water.	(= <i>water of hot</i>)
Maji <u>ya baridi</u>	= cold water.	(= <i>water of cold</i>)
Fedha <u>ya kutosha</u>	= enough money.	(= <i>money of to be enough</i>)
Mahali <u>pa utulivu</u>	= a quiet place.	(= <i>place of calm</i>)

The noun or the word placed after the connective **-A** can take the prefix of manner **KI-**. Thus :

Chakula <u>cha kizungu</u>	= European cooking.	(= <i>food of white</i>)
Nyumba <u>ya kisasa</u>	= a modern house.	(= <i>house of now</i>)

2. COMMON ADJECTIVAL WORDS :

1. Adjectives formed with a noun :

-a baridi	cold
-a bure	free
-a haki	right
-a hatari	dangerous
-a kawaida	natural, régular
-a kushoto	(on the) left
-a kweli	true

-a lazima	necessary
-a moto	hot
-a mwisho	last
-a porini	wild
-a siri	secret
-a taifa	national
-a zamani	old, ancient

2. Adjectives formed with a verb in the infinitive :

-a kufaa	convenient
-a kupendeza	pleasant, nice
-a kulia	(on the) right
-a kutosha	enough, sufficient

3. Prepositional verbs can also be used to express the finality of something :

-a kukatia	for cutting
-a kulimia	for cultivating
-a kupimia	for measuring
-a kusafishia	for cleaning
-a kutilia	for putting

4. Adjectives formed with a word prefixed with **KI-** :

-a kienyeji	native, local
-a kihindi	Indian
-a kike	female, feminine
-a kimataifa	international
-a kisasa	modern
-a kitoto	childish
-a kiume	male, masculine
-a kizungu	European

5. Adjectives formed with an adverb :

Chakula cha jana	yesterday's food
Desturi za kale	old habits / customs
Desturi za kwetu	local habits / customs
Mashamba ya mbali	remote plantations

Watu wa hapa local people

6. The ordinal numbers are formed on this model (see : [Chapter 22](#)) :

-a kwanza	first
-a pili	second
-a tatu	third
-a nne	fourth

7. In common noun associations, the particule **-A** has all but disappeared :

Askari koti	a police officer in uniform
Askari kanzu	a plain clothes policeman
Bata maji	a water fowl
Kijana mwanamke	a young girl
Mbwa mwitu	a wolf
Mtu tajiri	a rich person
Mwaka jana	last year
Mwana kondoo	a lamb
Viazi ulaya	potatoes

3. ADJECTIVAL NOUNS AFTER THE PARTICLE "-ENYE" :

The possessive particule **-ENYE** (= "who / which / that has", "having") placed in front of a noun confers to that one an adjectival value. That particule agrees with the possessor by taking a particular prefix of agreement that is quite similar to the object infix of the corresponding class. Thus :

Mtu <u>mwenye</u> afya	a man in good health
Watu <u>wenye</u> mali	rich people
Mti <u>wenye</u> miiba	a thorny tree
Miti <u>yenye</u> nguvu	vigorous trees
Chumba <u>chenye</u> giza	a dark room.
Samaki <u>mwenye</u> mafuta	a fat fish

Agreements of the adjectival particule -ENYE

CLASS	NOUNS	-ENYE	CLASS	NOUNS	-ENYE
--------------	--------------	--------------	--------------	--------------	--------------

CI 1	Mtu	MWENYE	CI 2	Watu	WENYE
CI 3	Mti	WENYE	CI 4	Miti	YENYE
CI 5	Gari	LENYE	CI 6	Magari	YENYE
CI 7	Kiti	CHENYE	CI 8	Viti	VYENYE
CI 9	Nguo	YENYE	CI 10	Nguo	ZENYE

NOTE : The adjectival particule **-ENYE** is more generally used to mark possession :

Mtu mwenye ng'ombe	= somebody with cows.
Yule mwenye kofia	= that one with a hat.
Kiti chenye miguu mitatu	= a chair with three legs.
Chai yenye sukari	= tea with sugar

4. THE RELATIVE USED AS AN ADJECTIVE :

We can also, like what is done in English with a past participle, use a verb in a relative construction or a general relative. (See : [Chapter 52](#) and [Chapter 53](#).)

EXAMPLES :

Meza iliyovunjika	a broken table
Mwaka uliopita	last year
Mwezi ujao	next month
Nchi isiyo na maji	an arid country
Samaki asiye na mafuta	a lean fish (<i>which has no fat</i>)

PROVERB :

Penye nia pana njia

VOCABULARY

Dhahabu	gold	Homa	fever
Giza	darkness	Jasho	sweat

Harufu	an odor	Jinsi	the manner, the way
Hela	money	Kamusi	a dictionary
Herufi	a letter (alphabet)	Kimya	silence
Hesabu	a calculation, an account	Orodha	a list

Mots Croisés

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

Hot water, an old house, the last day, a usual work, the first time, European food, English money, the left arm, the right foot, a broken table, a dark room, a rich person, a man in good health, lean meat, old habits, a modern car, a dangerous game, a secret love, a right person, a pleasant work, a male child, the second child, a water fowl, potatoes, a lamb.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Mwanangu hapati chakula cha kutosha.
2. Napenda kula chakula cha kienyeji.
3. Lazima wakulima wafuate kilimo cha kisasa.
4. Mtoto amevunja mkono wake wa kulia.
5. Nadhani leo itakuwa siku ya mwisho ya Ramadhani.
6. Tunataka kupiga picha za wanyama wa porini.
7. Ninapenda viazi ulaya kuliko viazi vitamu.
8. Mbwa mwitu amekula mwana mbuzi mmoja.
9. Mke wake amemzalia mtoto wa kike.
10. Ninahitaji karatasi ya kuandikia barua.
11. Nipe chai yenye sukari.
12. Samaki mwenye mafuta si mzuri kwa afya yako.
13. Mwaka uliopita tulipita nchi isiyo na maji.
14. Wanyama wapenda kulala katika mahali pa giza.
15. Mwrite mtu mwenye kofia, nataka kuzungumza naye.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 45 - The Locative Classes

There are three distinct locative classes in Swahili : Classes 16, 17 and 18, according to the nomenclature of Bantu languages.

- Class 16 is characterized by the class prefix **P-**, **PA-** or **PO-**. It indicates a definite position. It contains only one noun : **MAHALI** (or **MAHALA** or **PAHALI**), a word which means : a place. This class is especially present in the class agreements which it involves, often even in the absence of the noun "**MAHALI**". It is also attested by the demonstratives **HAPA**, **PALE**, **HAPO** and the connective **PA**.
- Class 17 is characterized by the class prefix **KU-**. It indicates a movement from one place to another or an indefinite position. This class does not comprise any noun, but it is attested by the demonstratives **HUKU**, **KULE**, **HUKO** and the connective **KWA**.
- Class 18 is characterized by the class prefix **M-** or **MW-**. It indicates a position inside a place. It is attested by the demonstratives **HUMU**, **MLE**, **HUMO** and the connective **MWA**.

1. ADJECTIVES :

The adjective agrees by taking the locative prefix **PA-**.

Mahali <u>p</u>azuri.	a good place.
Mahali <u>p</u>abaya.	a bad place.
Mahali <u>p</u>adogo.	a small place.
Mahali <u>p</u>ema.	a nice place.
Mahali <u>p</u>engine.	another place.

2. VERBS :

(See : [Chapter 17](#) and [Chapter 18](#).)

There are three locative subject prefixes : **PA-**, **KU-** and **MU-** corresponding respectively to classes 16, 17 et 18. Those exist only in the 3rd person singular. A point worth noting is that the locative, which is usually in the position of complement in the English sentence, can easily be the subject of a sentence in Swahili :

Compare the word order : **Bondeni kulipandwa minazi.**
Coconut trees were planted in the valley.

EXAMPLES :

Mahali hapa pamejaa watu. This place is full of people.

Mezani hapakuwa na kitambaa	There was no table cloth on the table.
Nyumbani mwetu mmewekwa vyombo vipya.	New equipment was put in our house.
Hakuna kitu nyuma ya kabati.	There is nothing behind the cupboard.
Hapa palikufa simba.	A lion died here.
Mwituni mmelala wanyama.	Animals are sleeping in the forest.

They are frequently used with the verb **KUWA NA** (= to have) to translate "there is" or "there isn't":

EXAMPLES :

Pana mtoto mlangoni.	There is a child at the door.
Kuna wageni shambani.	There are foreigners in the field.
Mna kitu sandukuni.	There is something in the box.
Hapana miti hapa.	There are no trees here.
Hakuna mahindi mengi shambani.	There is not much corn in the field.
Hamna maji kisimani.	There is no water in the well.

3. THE CONNECTIVES "PA", "MWA" and "KWA" :

(See : [Chapter 26](#) and [Chapter 29](#).)

1. **PA** is used after the noun **MAHALI** and also after nouns suffixed in **-NI**. It is also used to form compound adjectives (See : [Chapter 44](#).):

EXAMPLES :

Mahali <u>pa</u> utulivu.	A quiet place.
Mahali <u>pa</u> hatari.	A dangerous place.
Aliacha jembe mlangoni <u>pa</u> mzee.	He left the hoe at the old man's door.

2. **MWA** is used after nouns suffixed in **-NI** :

EXAMPLES :

Watoto wanasoma nyumbani <u>mwa</u> mwalimu.	The children learn at the teacher's house.
Miongoni <u>mwa</u> watoto, mmoja anasimama.	Among the children, one of them is standing.

3. The connective **KWA** is certainly one of the most frequently employed and it possesses many different meanings : at, to, by, for, with, and, etc. :

EXAMPLES :

Anakaa kwa Ali.

He stays at Ali's.

Nitakwenda kwa jumbe.

I will go to the chief's.

Alifika kwa gari la moshi.

He arrived by train.

Chakula hiki hakifai kwa wageni.

This meal is not appropriate for the guests.

Nitakula wali kwa mchuzi.

I will eat rice with / and sauce.

4. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES :

Possessive adjectives take the prefixes **PA-**, **KW-** or **MW-** to agree with nouns suffixed in **-NI** (See : [Chapter 29](#).) :

EXAMPLES :

Majirani pake.

In his neighbourhood.

Nyumbani kwako.

At your house.

Moyoni mwangu.

In my heart.

5. LOCATIVE ADVERBS :

(See : [Chapter 26](#).)

6. THE INTERROGATIVE WORD "WAPI ?" :

(See : [Chapter 21](#).)

7. DEMONSTRATIVES :

(See : [Chapter 26](#).)

PLACE	Proximity	Distance	Reference	CLASS
Precise place	HAPA here	PALE around here	HAPO here inside	Class 16
Vague place	HUKU over there	KULE by over there	HUKO there inside	Class 17
Interior place	HUMU there	MLE there around	HUMO inside	Class 17

These demonstratives can be used by themselves, or with a noun of place suffixed in **-NI** (= at, in, on).

EXAMPLES :

Mahali pale.

This place over there.

Itie hapa mezani.

Put it here on the table.

Anakaa huku.

He lives here.

Miongoni mwa watu wale kule.

Among these people over there.

Tia sahani hizi kabatini humo !

Put these plates inside this cupboard.

8. THE RELATIVE INFIXES "PO-", "KO-" and "MO-" :

We insert the relative infix "PO-" (or "KO-" or "MO-") between the tense marker and the verbal root to signify "when", "where", "in which".

EXAMPLES :

Tulumwa na kunguni tulipolala.

We were bitten by insects while we were sleeping.

Kipofu awezi kuona anakokwenda wala aoni anakotoka.

A blind man can't see where he goes nor where he comes from.

Shimoni alimoingia panya.

The hole which the mouse entered.



Mzee Meko

Mzee Meko alipofika nyumbani aligonga lakini mkewe alikataa kumfungulia akalala nje hadi asubuhi.

When Mzee Meko arrived at home, he knocked at the door but his wife refused to open, and he slept till the morning.

VOCABULARY

Chungu (vy-)	a pot	Kiroboto (vi-)	a flea
Kibao (vi-)	a panel	Kitana (vi-)	a comb
Kifo (vi-)	death	Kitendawili (vi-)	a riddle
Kinanda (vi-)	a piano	Kiu (vi-)	thirst
Kipini (vi-)	a handle	Kiungo (vi-)	an articulation
Kiraka (vi-)	a mending	Kizunguzungu (vi-)	a dizzy spell

Mots Croisés

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

A nice place, a dark place, a quiet place, another place, inside the house, outside, behind the door, on top of the mountain, in front of the shop, in the box, in the middle of the city, on the table, in the cupboard, in the teacher's house, in the Arab's shop, at the old man's door, at Ali's, at my father's, in your house, at that place over there.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Je, yako maji kwako ? - Hakuna.
2. Simama ! Ninatelemka hapa.
3. Kuna watu wengi huko Dar es Salaam.
4. Pashia mizigo katika gari !
5. Watu wa makabila mengi wanakaa Mombasa.
6. Mbwa analala nje. Usimwache kuingia ndani !
7. Ninakaa kwa rafiki yangu Abdallah.
8. Hakuna chungu wala vyombo vingine vyote kabatini.



Chapter 46 - The -KI- Tense

The **-KI-** tense is a tense that marks the simultaneity of an action in relation to another. Its meaning changes slightly according to its position in the sentence : if it is the first verb in a sentence, it corresponds to a present conditional in English ; if it follows a first verb which is in the present, past or future, then it corresponds to a present participle (verb ending in -ing) or to an infinitive in English.

1. THE "KI" TENSE - AFFIRMATIVE :

The tense marker **-KI-** is placed between the affirmative subject prefix and the verbal root. The meaning of that infix is "if". The verb in **-KI-** is followed by a verb in the future or in the imperative, in the sentence.

SUBJECT PREFIX + KI + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to do, to make

NI-KI-FANYA	-> nikifanya	if I make
U-KI-FANYA	-> ukifanya	if you make
A-KI-FANYA	-> akifanya	if he / she makes
TU-KI-FANYA	-> tukifanya	if we make
M-KI-FANYA	-> mkifanya	if you make
WA-KI-FANYA	-> wakifanya	if they make

NOTE : Monosyllabic verbs drop their infinitive prefix **KU-** :

MODEL : **KWENDA** = to go

NI-KI-ENDA	-> nikienda	if I go
U-KI-ENDA	-> ukienda	if you go
A-KI-ENDA	-> akienda	if he / she goes
TU-KI-ENDA	-> tukienda	if we go
M-KI-ENDA	-> mkienda	if you go
WA-KI-ENDA	-> wakienda	if they go

EXAMPLES :

Ukipanda mlima wa Kilimanjaro, lazima uchukue nguo za kutosha.

If you climb up Mount Kilimanjaro, you must take enough clothes.

Ukienda Ulaya, utaninunulia zawadi.

If you go to Europe, you will buy me a gift.

Mpishi akichelewa tena leo, mfukuze.

If the cook is late again today, fire him.

2. THE "KI" TENSE - NEGATIVE :

The negative tense marker **-SIPO-** is placed between the subject prefix and the verbal root. Since **-SIPO-** is a negative mark of time, affirmative subject prefixes must be used in conjunction with it. That infix means "if not" or "unless".

SUBJECT PREFIX + SIPO + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to do, to make

NI-SIPO-FANYA	-> nisipofanya	if I don't make
U-SIPO-FANYA	-> usipofanya	if you don't make
A-SIPO-FANYA	-> asipofanya	if he / she doesn't make
TU-SIPO-FANYA	-> tusipofanya	if we don't make
M-SIPO-FANYA	-> msipofanya	if you don't make
WA-SIPO-FANYA	-> wasipofanya	if they don't make

NOTE : Monosyllabic verbs keep their infinitive prefix **KU-** :

MODEL : **KWENDA** = to go

NI-SIPO-KWENDA	-> nisipokwenda	if I don't go
U-SIPO-KWENDA	-> usipokwenda	if you don't go
A-SIPO-KWENDA	-> asipokwenda	if he / she doesn't go
TU-SIPO-KWENDA	-> tusipokwenda	if we don't go
M-SIPO-KWENDA	-> msipokwenda	if you don't go
WA-SIPO-KWENDA	-> wasipokwenda	if they don't go

3. THE -KI- TENSE AS A PRESENT PARTICIPLE :

When a verb in **-KI-** follows a first verb in the sentence, it marks the simultaneity of the second action in relation to the first. According to the context, it will be translated differently in English : either by a verb ending in "-ing" (present participle), or by an infinitive.

<u>Verb ending in "-ing" :</u>	Walikuwa wakicheza.	They were playing.
	Mtoto alipita akiimba.	The child passed singing.
<u>Infinitive :</u>	Tuliwaona wakicheza.	We saw them play.
	Nilimwona akilia.	I saw her cry.

The first verb can be conjugated in different tenses :

<u>Past Perfect :</u>	Amekuwa akicheza.	He / she has been playing.
<u>Simple past :</u>	Alikuwa akicheza.	He / she was playing.
<u>Future :</u>	Atakuwa akicheza.	He / she will be playing.

(See : [Chapter 54 - Compound Tenses.](#))

EXPRESSION :

Ukipenda usipende, ni mamoja kwangu !

VOCABULARY

Bastola	a gun	Kamba	a rope
Cherehani	a sewing machine	Karabai	a pressure lamp
Filimbi	a whistle	Kufuli	a lock
Fimbo	a walking stick	Lami	tar
Gundi	glue	Lipu	plaster
Hema	a tent	Seng'e seng'e	barbed wire

Mots Croisés

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. If you like, if they eat, if I drink, if the tree falls, if she answers, if you think, if they come, if I give you, if he dies, if he tells us, if you get permission, if the food is brought, if he gets eggs, if you tell me your name, if the letters are brought.
- b. He was reading, I saw him laugh, I heard her sing, they will be playing tomorrow, they are tired because they were playing, I have seen the tree fall, they saw the tourists arrive, he was cooking, the food was cooking, I saw you cry.
- c. The teacher was teaching how to read and write, the Masais will dance tomorrow evening, we worked in the bush, if you come tomorrow I'll give you money, if you see animals you'll be lucky.

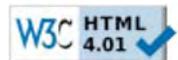
EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Nilimwona mwalimu akijenga nyumba yake.
2. Tusipopata mvua, mihindi haitaota.
3. Mkienda Mombasa leo, mtawaona watoto wetu wakicheza mpira.
4. Chakula kisipoiva, hakitafaa.
5. Ukienda Nairobi, ninulie vitu kadhaa.
6. Alikuwa akiendesha gari lake haraka mno.
7. Tuliwaona wanafunzi wetu wakicheza mjini.
8. Mzee alikuwa akilala mkutanoni.
9. Mkienda kule, mtamwona mlimaji akilima shambani kwake.
10. Ukijaribu sana, utaweza kusema kiswahili safi.
11. Nisipopumzika sasa, nitachoka sana.
12. Akija asije, ni mamoja kwangu.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 47 - Conditional Tenses

Apart from the **-KI-** tense that may already correspond to the use of the English Present Conditional, there are two more conditional tenses in Swahili: The Present Conditional and the Past Conditional. These two tenses are used to form assumptions or hypothesis. (See : [Chapter 46 - The -KI- Tense](#) and [Chapter 48 - Hypothesis](#).)

1. THE PRESENT CONDITIONAL :

A. AFFIRMATIVE :

The tense marker of the present conditional is the infix **-NGE-**, placed between the subject prefix and the verbal root.

SUBJECT PREFIX + NGE + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : **KUPENDA** = to like, to love

NI-NGE-PENDA	-> ningependa	I would like
U-NGE-PENDA	-> ungependa	you would like
A-NGE-PENDA	-> angependa	he / she would like
TU-NGE-PENDA	-> tungependa	we would like
M-NGE-PENDA	-> mngependa	you would like
WA-NGE-PENDA	-> wangependa	they would like

Monosyllabic verbs keep their infinitive prefix **KU-** :

NI-NGE-KU-LA	-> ningekula	I would eat
A-NGE-KWENDA	-> angekwenda	he / she would go
U-NGE-KUWA	-> ungekuwa	you would be
WA-NGE-KUWA NA	-> wangukuwa na	they would have

B. NEGATIVE :

In the negative form, the negative infix **-SI-** is added in front of the tense marker of the present conditional **-NGE-**. Since it is a negative mark, affirmative subject prefixes must be used in conjunction with it.

SUBJECT PREFIX + SI + NGE + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : **KUPENDA** = to like, to love

NI-SI-NGE-PENDA	-> nisingependa	I wouldn't like
U-SI-NGE-PENDA	-> usingependa	you wouldn't like
A-SI-NGE-PENDA	-> asingependa	he / she wouldn't like
TU-SI-NGE-PENDA	-> tusingependa	we wouldn't like
M-SI-NGE-PENDA	-> msingependa	you wouldn't like
WA-SI-NGE-PENDA	-> wasingependa	they wouldn't like

Monosyllabic verbs keep their infinitive prefix **KU-** :

NI-SI-NGE-KU-LA	-> nisingekula	I wouldn't eat
A-SI-NGE-KWENDA	-> asingekwenda	he / she wouldn't go
U-SI-NGE-KUWA	-> usingekuwa	you wouldn't be
WA-SI-NGE-KUWA NA	-> wasingekuwa na	they wouldn't have

2. THE PAST CONDITIONAL :

A. AFFIRMATIVE :

The tense marker of the past conditional is the infix **-NGALI-** (formed of **NGE + LI**), placed between the subject prefix and the verbal root.

SUBJECT PREFIX + NGALI + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : **KUPENDA** = to like, to love

NI-NGALI-PENDA	-> ningalipenda	I would have liked
U-NGALI-PENDA	-> ungalipenda	you would have liked
A-NGALI-PENDA	-> angalipenda	he / she would have liked
TU-NGALI-PENDA	-> tungalipenda	we would have liked
M-NGALI-PENDA	-> mngalipenda	you would have liked

WA-NGALI-PENDA -> **wangalipenda** they would have liked

Monosyllabic verbs retain their infinitive prefix **KU-** :

NI-NGALI-KU-LA	-> ningalikula	I would have eaten
A-NGALI-KWENDA	-> angalikwenda	he / she would have gone
U-NGALI-KUWA	-> ungalikuwa	you would have been
WA-NGALI-KUWA NA	-> wangalikuwa na	they would have had

B. NEGATIVE :

In the negative form, the negative infix **-SI-** is added in front of the tense marker of the past conditional **-NGALI-**. Since it is a negative mark, affirmative subject prefixes must be used in conjunction with it.

SUBJECT PREFIX + SI + NGALI + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : **KUPENDA** = to like, to love

NI-SI-NGALI-PENDA	-> nisingalipenda	I wouldn't have liked
U-SI-NGALI-PENDA	-> usingalipenda	you wouldn't have liked
A-SI-NGALI-PENDA	-> asingalipenda	he / she wouldn't have liked
TU-SI-NGALI-PENDA	-> tusingalipenda	we wouldn't have liked
M-SI-NGALI-PENDA	-> msingalipenda	you wouldn't have liked
WA-SI-NGALI-PENDA	-> wasingalipenda	they wouldn't have liked

Monosyllabic verbs retain their infinitive prefix **KU-** :

NI-SI-NGALI-KU-LA	-> nisingalikula	I wouldn't have eaten
A-SI-NGALI-KWENDA	-> asingalikwenda	he / she wouldn't have gone
U-SI-NGALI-KUWA	-> usingalikuwa	you wouldn't have been
WA-SI-NGALI-KUWA NA	-> wasingalikuwa na	they wouldn't have had

VOCABULARY

Ku-aga	to say goodbye	Ku-dhani	to think
Ku-ajiri	to employ, to hire	Ku-fukuza	to chase, to fire
Ku-beba	to carry on the back	Ku-goma	to go on strike
Ku-chafya	to sneeze	Ku-hesabu	to count, to calculate
Ku-chambua	to sort	Ku-husu	to concern
ku-chimba	to dig	Ku-kusanya	to gather, to heap

Mots Croisés

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. I would like, I would make, I would take, I wouldn't have, I wouldn't go, you wouldn't want, you could, you would come, you wouldn't eat, you would stop, he would borrow, he would fill, he wouldn't count, he would fire, he would sneeze, we would not be tired, we wouldn't know, we would come back, we would wear, we would go by, you would read (plur), you would receive (plur), you wouldn't bring (plur), you wouldn't emigrate (plur), you would buy (plur), they would laugh, they wouldn't get angry, they would hope, they wouldn't despise, they would understand.
- b. I would have left, I would have done, I wouldn't have answered, I wouldn't have seen, you would have written, you would have met, you wouldn't have known, he would have waited, he would have got, he wouldn't have agreed, we would have come, we would have met each other, we wouldn't have been, you would have been (plur), you would have swept (plur), you wouldn't have chosen (plur), they would have employed, they would have dug, they would have looked alike, they wouldn't have liked.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Usingevuta sigara.
2. Angeweza kuja leo.
3. Ungeniuliza.
4. Usingalikunywa pombe ile.
5. Asingaliingia chumba kile.
6. Tungejua kiswahili.
7. Mizigo ingaliletwa hapa.
8. Mbegu zingepandwa.
9. Mzee asingalikufa.
10. Nisingekuwa mgonjwa.
11. Ungalituma barua.
12. Tungalipwa mshahara.



Chapter 48 - Hypothesis

Just like in English, it is possible to express 3 different hypothetic levels in Swahili :

- What is POTENTIAL, or Present Real Hypothesis.
- What is ASSUMPTIVE, or Past Real Hypothesis.
- What is SPECULATIVE, or Past Irreal Hypothesis.

1. PRESENT REAL HYPOTHESIS :

We speak here of a fact that has not yet taken place, and imagine what will happen if something else is to happen.

We use the **-KI-** tense to express the condition "if...". The second verb which expresses the consequence is in the Future or the Imperative. (See : [Chapter 46 - The -KI- Tense](#).)

EXAMPLES :

Wakinywa pombe ile, watalewa.

If they drink that local beer, they will get drunk.

Ukimwona Hamisi, mwambie aje hapa.

If you see Hamisi, tell him to come here.

Kama ukienda Zanzibar, utaona jumba la Sultani.

If you go to Zanzibar, you'll see the Sultan's palace.

Barua isipopelekwa leo, itachelewa.

If the letter is not sent today, it will arrive late.

2. PAST REAL HYPOTHESIS :

We speak here of a fact that has not taken place, but whose probable degree of realization is very low.

We use the Present Conditional to formulate this type of assumption. The second verb must be conjugated in the same tense. (Voir : [Chapter 47 - The Present Conditional](#).)

MODEL :

Ningekwenda sasa, ningemwona.

If I went now, I would see him.

(If I would go now, I would see him.)

EXAMPLES :

Ningekaribu sana, ningeweza kusema kiswahili.

If I really tried, I could speak Swahili.

Ungekuja leo, ningekupikia keki.

If you came today, I would cook you a cake.

Ungesoma gazeti ile, ungejua habari zote.

If you read that newspaper, you'd know all the news.

Mvua ingenyesha leo, ningepanda mbegu zangu.

If it rained today, I would plant my seeds.

Nisingekuwa mzee sasa, ningeweza kupanda mlima wa Kilimanjaro.

If I wasn't an old man now, I could climb Mount Kilimanjaro.

Wangepumzika, wasingechoka.

If they rested, they wouldn't be tired.

3. PAST IRREAL HYPOTHESIS :

We make here an intellectual speculation, a comeback on an action that has already taken place, and for which we imagine another unfolding. The degree of realization of that speculation is nil.

We use the Past Conditional to formulate this type of hypothesis. The second verb is in the same tense. (See : [Chapter 47 - The Past Conditional](#).)

MODEL :

Ningalijaribu sana, ningalifaulu.

If I had tried hard, I would have succeeded.

(If I would have tried hard, I would have succeeded.)

EXAMPLES :

Ningalikujua, ningaliweza kukuuliza.

If I had known you, I could have asked you.

Ungalikuja jana, ningalikupikia keki.

If you had come yesterday, I would have cooked you a cake.

Mtoto angalianguka mtini, angalikufa.

If the child had fallen from the tree, he would have died.

Mvua isingalinyesha jana, nisingaliweza kupanda mbegu zangu.

If it had not rained yesterday, I couldn't have planted my seeds.

Wangalipumzika, wasingalichoka.

If they had rested, they wouldn't be tired.

4. MIXING TENSES :

It is quite possible to combine two tenses to formulate hypothesis, so that an assumption formulated in the Present Conditional can be followed by its realization in the Past Conditional, and conversely.

EXAMPLES :

Ningekuwa mzee sasa, ningaliweza kukuambia jambo lile. If I was an old man now, I could have told you about it.

Ungalisoma gazeti hili, ungejua habari zote sasa.

If you had read this newspaper, you would know all the news now.

Ungalimwambia habari, asingekwenda safari.

If you had told him the news, he would not have gone on his journey.

Isingekuwa mwezi wa Desemba, ungaliweza kwenda Uingereza.

If we weren't in December, you could have gone to England.

PROVERB :

Usipoziba ufa, utajenga ukuta

NOW, LEARN THE SONG : MALAIKA :

Malaika, nakupenda Malaika.
Malaika, nakupenda Malaika.
Nami nifanyeje, kijana mwenzio,
Nashindwa na mali sina, we,
Ningekuhua Malaika.

VOCABULARY

Ubaguzi	segregation	Ukoo	a clan
Ubavu (mbavu)	a side	Ukucha (kucha)	a claw
Ubovu	rot	Umande	dew
Udongo ulaya	cement	Upinde	an arc
Ufuko	the sea shore	Usaha	pus
Uhai	life	Wavu (nyavu)	a net

Mots Croisés

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. If I read, if you climbed, if we had eaten, if they had tried, if I had the key, if the luggage had come, if the mail was brought, if you had come, if it rained, if you spoke Swahili, if I had come yesterday, if I had a motorbike.
- b. If the tree had not fallen, if the house was not here, if you weren't a teacher, if she wasn't sick, if the doctor had not come, if it was not dangerous, the old man wouldn't have died, he wouldn't have had an accident, if I didn't go to Moshi, we wouldn't have found a hotel, if we hadn't come late.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Kama ungejua kusoma, ningekununulia kitabu.
2. Ungepata mshahara, ungepata chakula.
3. Ungalipata kazi, ungalipata mshahara.
4. Angepanda mihindi, angeweza kupata mavuno mazuri.
5. Tungalilima mwaka huu, tungalipata mavuno.
6. Tukipata samaki, hatutanunua nyama.
7. Kama nchi hii ingepata mvua, watu wengi wangejenga hapa.
8. Ungevaa koti la mvua, usingesikia baridi.
9. Ningekuwa wewe, nisingevaa nguo ile.
10. Ungalimwambia shida zako, bwana angaliweza kukusaidia.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 49 - Habitual Present Tense

In addition to the Present Definite and the Present Indefinite, Swahili possesses a third tense in the present, the habitual Present. This tense is used to speak about usual practices or truths of a general order, without making reference to any specific time.

(See : [Chapter 8 - The Present Definite](#) and [Chapter 10 - The Present Indefinite](#).)

The Habitual Present can in many cases be used instead of the Present Indefinite.

1. THE AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

The tense marker of the Habitual Present is the prefix **HU-** which is placed in front of the verbal root. The termination of the verb does not change.

Because the Habitual Present doesn't take any subject prefixes, this verbal form is identical for all persons and for all nominal classes. When it becomes necessary to identify the person, we use the autonomous personal pronouns. (See : [Chapter 7 - The Autonomous Personal Pronouns](#).)

HU + VERB RADICAL

MODEL 1 : KUPENDA = to like, to love

MIMI	HUPENDA	I like
WEWE	HUPENDA	you like
YEYE	HUPENDA	he / she likes
SISI	HUPENDA	we like
NINYI	HUPENDA	you like
WAO	HUPENDA	they like

Monosyllabic verbs drop their infinitive prefix **KU-** :

MODEL 2 : KULA = to eat

MIMI	HULA	I eat
WEWE	HULA	you eat
YEYE	HULA	he / she eats
SISI	HULA	we eat
NINYI	HULA	you eat
WAO	HULA	they eat

EXAMPLES :**Daktari huja hapa Jumanne.**

The doctor usually comes here on Tuesday.

Kidege, hukuwaza kidege.

Little bird, I dream of you little bird.

Duka lile huuza mkate.

That shop sells bread.

Ng'ombe hula majani.

Cows eat grass.

Basi la Iringa hufika huko njiapanda saa nane.

The Iringa bus usually comes here at the crossroads at 2 p.m.

Mwenye kutega kitendawili husema : "Kitendawili !".

The one who poses a riddle says : "Riddle !".

Na wasikilizaji wake hujibu : "Tega !".

And his listeners answer : "Set it !".

2. THE NEGATIVE FORM :

The Habitual Present has no specific form in the negative. Instead, the negative form of the Present Definite tense is used. (See : [Chapter 8 - The Present Definite, Negative Form.](#))

3. USE :

The Habitual Present is frequently used in **METHALI** = Swahili sayings and proverbs (See : [Methali #01.](#)), as well as in **VITENDAWILI** = Swahili riddles, for which there is usually no specific time reference :

EXAMPLES :**Haba na haba hujaza kibaba.**

Little by little fills up the measure.

Paka akiondoka, panya hutawala.

When the cat is away, the mice will play.

Mpanda ovyo, hula ovyo.

He who sows disorderly fashion will eat likewise.

Ubishi mwingi huleta mateso.

Too much joking brings quarrel.

Kitendawili ? - Tega !**Hulala tulalapo, huamka tuamkapo. (jua)**Goes to sleep when we sleep, wakes up when we get up. (*the sun*)**Huwafanya watu wote walie. (moshi)**

Makes everybody cry. (*smoke*)

VOCABULARY

Kanzu	a man's muslim robe	Ramani	a map, a plan
Kaptula	shorts	Sakafu	the ground, the floor
Maiti	a corpse, a body	Shaba	copper
Mashua	a boat	Sindano	a syringe
Nafaka	grains	Stesheni	a station
Nguzo	a pillar	Takataka	refuse, waste

Mots Croisés

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

I go, he arrives, we rest, he starts, you eat, he thinks, she speaks, you like, they die, he goes, we rejoice, she cries, you answer, he drinks, they catch, I need, he leaves, we wait, she closes, you come back.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Mayai hupatikana hapa kila jumatatu.
2. Mlango wa shule hufunguliwa saa moja.
3. Nguo hufuliwa kila siku mbili.
4. Pikipiki huhitaji petroli na oili.
5. Watu hupumzika Jumapili.
6. Mkulima huyo hupata mavuno mazuri.
7. Basi huondoka stesheni saa mbili na nusu.
8. Kitendawili : Mzee Kombe akilia, watu hufurahi. (Mvua).
9. Kitendawili : Mwanamke mfupi hutengeneza pombe nzuri. (Nyuki).
10. Kitendawili : Hula lakini hashibi. (Sindano).



Chapter 50 - The -KA- Tenses

The tense marker **-KA-** indicates the consecutivity of an action in relation to another.

We distinguish 3 uses of the infix marker **-KA-** :

1. The PAST NARRATIVE
2. The CONSECUTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE
3. The TELEGRAPHIC STYLE

1. THE PAST NARRATIVE :

The Past Narrative exists only in the affirmative.

The infix **-KA-** is placed between the affirmative subject prefix and the verb radical. This tense accommodates object infixes, but cannot be used in relative constructions.

A) PAST NARRATIVE - AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

SUBJECT PREFIX + KA + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

NI-KA-FANYA	-> nikafanya	and I made
U-KA-FANYA	-> ukafanya	and you made
A-KA-FANYA	-> akafanya	and he / she made
TU-KA-FANYA	-> tukafanya	and we made
M-KA-FANYA	-> mkafanya	and you made
WA-KA-FANYA	-> wakafanya	and they made

NOTE : Monosyllabic verbs drop their infinitive prefix **KU-** :

MODEL : **KWENDA** = to go

NI-KA-ENDA	-> nikaenda	and I went
U-KA-ENDA	-> ukaenda	and you went
A-KA-ENDA	-> akaenda	and he / she went
TU-KA-ENDA	-> tukaenda	and we went

M-KA-ENDA -> mkaenda	and you went
WA-KA-ENDA -> wakaenda	and they went

B) USE OF THE PAST NARRATIVE :

The Past Narrative (the **-KA-** tense) is used for narration, but it is often preceded in speech by a first verb in the Simple Past, be it affirmative or negative :

EXAMPLE : **Nilikwenda kijijini, nikamwona rafiki yangu, nikamwomba aje nami mjini, akakubali.**
I went to the village, I saw my friend, I asked him to come with me to town, and he accepted.

This example shows that the word **NA** (= and) is never expressed : this concept is already contained within the tense marker **-KA**.

To express negation, we use the Subjunctive negative instead. (See : [Chapter 33 - The Subjunctive](#).)

EXAMPLE : **Nilikwenda markiti, nikatafuta tungule (nyanya), nisipate.**
I went to the market, I looked for tomatoes and I didn't find any.

OTHER EXAMPLES :

Nilikwenda Zanzibar jana nikaerudi leo.

I went to Zanzibar yesterday and I came back today.

Alifika Mombasa, akajaribu kupata chumba hotelini, asipate.

He arrived in Mombasa, he tried to find a hotel room, and didn't get any.

Nilimwona mlimaji shambani, nikamwuliza : "Je, umepata mavuno mazuri ?" akasema : "Bwana, sikupata kitu".

I saw a farmer on his plantation, I asked him : "Tell me, Have you got good harvests ?" and he answered : "No, I haven't got anything at all".

Mzungu alifika Moshi, akaona mlima mkubwa sana, akamwuliza mwenyeji : "Je, mlima gani ule ?" mwenyeji akamjibu : "Huu ndio mlima wa kilimanjaro".

The white man arrived in Moshi, he saw a very high mountain, then he asked a villager : "What's this mountain ?" the villager answered him : "This is indeed Mount Kilimanjaro".

2. THE CONSECUTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE :

A) CONSECUTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE - AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

The tense marker **-KA-** is inserted in the verbal construction of the subjunctive affirmative.

SUBJECT PREFIX + KA + VERB RADICAL - E

MODEL (Verbs of Bantu origin) : KULETA = to bring

NI-KA-LETE	-> nikalete	and that I bring
U-KA-LETE	-> ukalete	and that you bring
A-KA-LETE	-> akalete	and that he / she brings
TU-KA-LETE	-> tukalete	and that we bring
M-KA-LETE	-> mkalete	and that you bring
WA-KA-LETE	-> wakalete	and that they bring

Verbs of Arabic origin keep their final vowel **-E, -I, or -U** :

NI-KA-JARIBU	-> nikajaribu	and that I try
U-KA-JITAHIDI	-> ukajitahidi	and that you make an effort
A-KA-SAMEHE	-> akasamehe	and that he / she forgive

Monosyllabic verbs drop their infinitive prefix **KU-** :

NI-KA-JE	-> nikaje	and that I come
U-KA-LE	-> ukale	and that you eat
A-KA-ENDE	-> akaende	and that he / she goes

NOTE : By its very nature the consecutive subjunctive can only be used with classes 1 / 2 (**M-/WA-** gender) subject prefixes.

B) USE OF THE CONSECUTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE :

This tense is used in conjunction with the verb **KWENDA** :

Twende tukale !	or : Tukale !	Let's go and eat !
Aende akamwite !	or : Akamwite !	Let him / her go and call him / her !

The tense marker **-KA-** can also be used in the imperative of the second person singular. In that case it corresponds to a "sharp" order :

Kalete !	Will you bring !
Kamwambie !	Will you tell him / her !
Kajitahidi !	Will you make an effort !

Nenda can also be used in front of the imperative in **-KA-** :

Nenda kalete ! Will you go and bring !

EXAMPLES :

Twende tukailete mizigo yetu hapa.	Let us bring our luggage here.
Nenda kamwambie alete chai.	Will you tell him to bring tea.
Ukanunue sigara dukani.	Will you buy cigarettes at the shop.
Bwana yupo ? - Yupo. - Kamwite basi !	Is the boss here ? - He is here. - Call him then !

3. THE TELEGRAPHIC STYLE :

The **-KA-** tense is probably the only tense (apart from the imperative) that can be used without a subject prefix, provided that the noun subject has been mentioned once in the sentence. This process is commonly used to make newspaper headlines in the daily press, but not exclusively, as will be seen in a cartoon extracted from Philip Ndunguru's comic book, **Mzee Meko**.

(NOUN SUBJECT) KA + VERB RADICAL

EXAMPLES :

WAZIRI KAFU
DEATH OF MINISTER
NDEGE KAANGUKA BAHARINI
PLANE FALLS INTO SEA
MWIZI KAKAMATWA
ROBBER CAUGHT



Mzee Meko

Yule baba yako kazidi jeuri maana jana karudi kalewa sana halafu anapiga kelele hovyoy tu. Basi nikamkomesha, sikumfungulia akalala nje mpaka asubuhi na hakusema lolote.

Your father has twisted the knife in the wound, for yesterday he came back home completely drunk, then he did a lot of noise, so I refused to open him and he slept outside until morning and he didn't say anything.

VOCABULARY

Ada	expenses	Amani	peace
Adhabu	a punishment	Arusi	a marriage
Afya	health	Elimu	teaching, education
Aibu	shame	Fitina	an argument
Ajabu	a wonder	Fulani	someone
Akina	relations	Hadithi	a story

Mots Croisés

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

1. Will you call the teacher !
2. Let's eat now !
3. Let them fetch the pupils !
4. Will you clean my car !
5. Would you go and read these books at the library.
6. Will you go and buy me a bottle of Coke in the shop.
7. Let us rest !
8. Let's drink coffee now !
9. If you don't know, go and ask !
10. He went to fish, he fell into the river, and couldn't get out.
11. They went hunting, killed an animal and ate it.
12. We didn't go outside, we stayed at home and watched television.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English:

1. **Nenda katazame !**
2. **Ukanilete maji, tafadhali !**
3. **Wakaende kutuletea kuni nyingi**
4. **Akanunua gari jipya, akalileta nyumbani, akalionyesha kwa kila mtu.**
5. **Niliwapa watoto maembe yangu. Wakala.**
6. **Bwana alipoingia, wale watu wakasimama wakamwamkia.**
7. **Alipolikataa shauri letu tukanyamaza.**
8. **Tembo walikuja usiku, wakauvunja ukuta wa shamba, wakaliharibu shamba lote.**
9. **Mtoto yuko wapi ? - Yuko uani. - Kamwite basi !**
10. **Usiongee na mtoto huyu, bali uende ukamwite mama yake.**
11. **Tulikwenda Hoteli ya Kati, tukafaulu kupata chumba kimoja.**
12. **Nenda kaone kama wazungu watakwenda Moshi kesho.**

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 51 - The Independent Relative Pronoun

1. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN "AMBA-" :

The relative pronouns "who", "which", "that", are most often present in Swahili as infixes or suffixes attached to the verb.

The relative infixes or suffixes must agree in class with the noun subject or object to which they refer.

However, there also exists an independent relative pronoun that can be used with all verbs in all tenses. This relative pronoun is **AMBA-** which can be translated in English by "who", "which", "that", or "whose", according to the situation.

AMBA- ends with the suffix **-O** of reference corresponding to the class of the noun with which it agrees. The relative **AMBA-** is placed between that noun and the verb that requires a relative.

Table of agreements of the Relative Pronoun **AMBA-**

GENDER / Classes	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M-/WA- (CI 1/2)	AMBA-	-YE	AMBA-	-O
M-/MI- (CI 3/4)	AMBA-	-O	AMBA-	-YO
JI-/MA- (CI 5/6)	AMBA-	-LO	AMBA-	-YO
KI-/VI- (CI 7/8)	AMBA-	-CHO	AMBA-	-VYO
N- (CI 9/10)	AMBA-	-YO	AMBA-	-ZO
U- (CI 11, 14 / 10)	AMBA-	-O	AMBA-	-ZO
KU- (CI 15)	AMBA-	-KO		
Locative Classes	AMBA-	-PO -KO -MO		

EXAMPLES :

Mtu ambaye amekuja

The person who has come

Watu ambao wamekuja

The people that have come

Mti ambao ulianguka

The tree that fell

Magari ambayo yanafika

The cars which arrive

Kiti ambacho kimevunjika

The chair which is broken

Nguo ambayo imepasuka

The garment which is torn

Mahali ambako hakuna watu

A place where there is nobody

2. USE OF THE INDEPENDANT RELATIVE PRONOUN :

The independant relative pronoun **AMBA-** is often used to clarify a phrase, in sentences where the relative infix attached to the verb would make it difficult to understand the message. Since one of its roles is to improve comprehension, it is increasingly used in modern Swahili, no doubt influenced by the use of the English relative pronouns.

EXAMPLES :**Huyu ni mtoto ambaye kesho hatakuja shule.**

Here is the child who will not come to school tomorrow.

Neno alilosema ambalo hatutalisahau.

The word which he said which we will not forget.

Naliliomba jembe dogo ambalo mwalimu halitumii anapolima shamba lake.

I asked for the small hoe that the teacher doesn't use when he cultivates his farm.

Huyu ni yule mgonjwa ambaye mwanangu alikupa habari zake jana.

Here is the patient about whom my son spoke to you yesterday.

Hiki ni kitabu ambacho ndani yake niliona picha yako. This is the book inside which I saw your photo.**VOCABULARY**

Nakala	a copy	Nyundo	a hammer
Nasibu	chance, a lottery	Pete	a ring
Ngao	a shield	Posho	a ration
Ngazi	a ladder	Ripoti	a report
Njaa	famine, hunger	Risasi	a bullet
Nta	wax	Silaha	a weapon

Mots Croisés

EXERCISES**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

1. Those that came.
2. The river that we saw.
3. The book which I read.
4. The one who was late.
5. The food that we ate.
6. Those who don't know.
7. The mountain which I climbed.
8. The person who is my cook.
9. The eggs which I bought.
10. The child who broke the window.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Mzee ambaye alikufa.
2. Mti ambao ulianguka.
3. Wageni ambao walifika jana.
4. Watoto ambao wanafundishwa na mwalimu yule.
5. Yule ambaye anaitwa Hamisi.
6. Dawa ambayo uliila.
7. Wale ambao watakwenda Moshi wataona mlima wa Kilimanjaro.
8. Gari ambalo nimelinunua ni safi kabisa.
9. Mizigo ambayo ilifika jana ni yangu.
10. Viazi ulaya ambavyo ulivinunua sokoni ni mbovu.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





Chapter 52 - Relative Verbal Constructions

Besides the independent relative pronoun **AMBA-**, there is in Swahili a relative particle that enters the verbal construction and that makes it possible to express the relative in the following tenses :

- Present Definite affirmative (tense marker **-NA-**).
- Simple Past affirmative (tense marker **-LI-**).
- Future affirmative (tense marker **-TAKA-**).
- A single negative tense, valid for the present, past and future.

The relative infix is made up with the **-O** of reference, that agrees in class with the noun it refers to. (See : [Chapter 31 - The "-O" of Reference.](#))

1. THE PRESENT DEFINITE RELATIVE :

The relative particle **-O** is placed between the tense marker **-NA-** and the verbal root.

SUBJECT PREFIX + NA + O + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

NI-NA-YE-FANYA	-> ninayefanya	that I do / who do
U-NA-YE-FANYA	-> unayefanya	that you do / who do
A-NA-YE-FANYA	-> anayefanya	that he/she does / who does
TU-NA-O-FANYA	-> tunaofanya	that we do / who do
M-NA-O-FANYA	-> mnaofanya	that you do / who do
WA-NA-O-FANYA	-> wanaofanya	that they do / who do

EXAMPLES :

Mtu anayobaki	The person <u>who</u> remains
Watu wanaobaki	The people <u>who</u> remain
Mti unaobaki	The tree <u>which</u> remains
Miti inayobaki	The trees <u>which</u> remain
Gari linalobaki	The car <u>which</u> remains

Magari yanayobaki	The cars <u>which</u> remain
Kiti kinachobaki	The chair <u>which</u> remains
Viti vinavyobaki	The chair <u>which</u> remain
Nguo inayobaki	The clothing <u>which</u> remains
Nguo zinazobaki	The clothes <u>which</u> remain

2. THE SIMPLE PAST RELATIVE :

The relative particle **-O** is placed between the tense marker **-LI-** and the verbal root.

SUBJECT PREFIX + LI + O + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

NI-LI-YE-FANYA	-> niliyefanya	that I made / who made
U-LI-YE-FANYA	-> uliyefanya	that you made / who made
A-LI-YE-FANYA	-> aliyefanya	that he/she made / who made
TU-LI-O-FANYA	-> tuliofanya	that we made / who made
M-LI-O-FANYA	-> mliofanya	that you made / who made
WA-LI-O-FANYA	-> waliofanya	that they made / who made

3. THE FUTURE RELATIVE :

In future, an extra syllable **-KA-** must be inserted between the tense marker **-TA-** and the relative infix. The origin of this syllable is the verb **ku-taka** (= to want).

SUBJECT PREFIX + TAKA + O + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

NI-TAKA-YE-FANYA	-> nitakayefanya	that I will make / who will make
U-TAKA-YE-FANYA	-> utakayefanya	that you will make / who will make
A-TAKA-YE-FANYA	-> atakayefanya	that he/she will make / who will make
TU-TAKA-O-FANYA	-> tutakaofanya	that we will make / who will make
M-TAKA-O-FANYA	-> mtakaofanya	that you will make / who will make

WA-TAKA-O-FANYA -> **watakaofanya** that they will make / who will make

EXAMPLES :

Wageni watakaofika kesho watakwenda Zanzibar.	The guests who will arrive tomorrow will go to Zanzibar.
Miti itakaoangushwa itatumiwa hapa.	The trees that will be felled will be used here.
Gari nitakalolinunua litakuwa ghali sana.	The car that I will buy will be very expensive.
Mwanamke nitakayemwoa lazima apendeze.	The woman that I will marry will have to be attractive.



Chakubanga

- Haya ni bei gani mananasi yako ?
- Mananasi siuzi ila ni zawadi kwa yule atakayenunua mpini ya jembe !
- So how much are your pineapples ?
- The pineapples I don't sell, but they are a gift for the one who will buy a hoe handle !

4. THE NEGATIVE RELATIVE :

The negative form of the relative doesn't include any tense marker and can be used as well for the present, past and future. It is formed by inserting the negative infix **-SI-** between the subject prefix and the relative infix, which is in turn followed by the verbal root.

SUBJECT PREFIX + SI + O + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

NI-SI-YE-FANYA -> nisiyefanya

I who do not make

U-SI-YE-FANYA -> usiyefanya

you who do not make

A-SI-YE-FANYA	-> asiyefanya	he/she who does not make
TU-SI-O-FANYA	-> tusiofanya	we who do not make
M-SI-O-FANYA	-> msiofanya	you who do not make
WA-SI-O-FANYA	-> wasiofanya	they who do not make

EXAMPLES :

Mtu asiyebaki	The person <u>who</u> does/did/will not remain
Watu wasiobaki	The people <u>who</u> do/did/will not remain
Mti usiofaa	A tree <u>which</u> is/was/will not (be) appropriate
Miti isiofaa	Trees <u>which</u> are/were/will not (be) appropriate
Gari lisilokuja	The car <u>that</u> does/did/will not come
Magari yasiyokuja	The cars <u>that</u> do/did/will not come
Chakula kisichotosha	The food <u>which</u> is/was/will not (be) enough
Viti visivyovunjika	Chairs <u>that</u> are/were/will not (be) broken
Nguo isiyofuliwa	A garment <u>which</u> is/was/will not (be) washed
Nguo zisizopasiwa	clothes <u>which</u> are/were/will not (be) ironed

5. THE RELATIVE AS A PRONOUN OBJECT :

Compare : The child who reads a book
 The book that the child reads

In both cases, "the child" is the subject of "read" ; but in the 1st sentence, the relative pronoun, which is the subject of the verb, refers to the child, while in the 2nd sentence, the relative pronoun, which is the complement object, refers to the book.

To translate the 2nd sentence in Swahili, two conditions must be observed : the relative infix must agree with "book", and an object infix must be inserted in the verbal construction.

EXAMPLES :

Mtoto aliyesoma kitabu	The child who read a book
Kitabu alichokisoma mtoto	The book that the child read
Mzee aliyelima shamba	The old man who cultivated the field
Shamba aliililima mzee	The field that the old man cultivated
Mimi nisiyesoma vitabu	I who do/did not read books
Vitabu nisivyovisoma	The books that I do/did not read

VOCABULARY

Pamba	cotton	Sumu	a poison, a toxin
Pembe	a tusk	Sura	figure, appearance
Pua	the nose	Taarifa	a report, a bulletin
Pumzi	breath	Tofauti	a difference
Raha	joy	Tumbako	tobacco
Siki	vinegar	Vifaa	equipment

Mots Croisés

EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

1. The knife that I gave you.
2. The books which I bought.
3. The tree that fell.
4. The house which will fall.
5. The fruit which were collected
6. The young people who seek work.
7. People who lived here.
8. The pupils who will speak Swahili.
9. The shop which sells various equipment.
10. The old man who sells tobacco at the market.
11. The cook who was fired from his job.
12. The guests who arrived yesterday.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. **Mwanafunzi aliyesoma vitavu vingi alipewa zawadi.**
2. **Wale wanaosoma kiswahili watakwenda Kenya mwaka ujao.**
3. **Mimi nisiyepua kiingereza, lazima niseme kiswahili.**
4. **Usivae nguo yasiyopigwa pasi.**
5. **Mpe mzee kiti kisichovunjika.**
6. **Wanafunzi watakaofaulu mtihani watapewa cheti.**
7. **Mpe maskini chakula kinachobaki.**

8. Huyu ni mtu anayetafuta kazi.
9. Wageni waliofika jana watakwenda kesho Zanzibar.
10. Mti mmoja ulioanguka umeharibu nyumba yangu.
11. Miti yote iliyoanguka uani itatumika kwa kujenga nyumba mpya.
12. Msichana nitakayemwoa lazima awe mzuri sana.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 53 - The General Relative

The General Relative is a Present Indefinite Relative. It is used in sentences of the type :

- "Farmers who cultivate plants."
- "Cows which eat grass."

1. AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

This specialized relative tense does not have a tense marker. the subject prefix is directly followed by the verb radical, while a relative suffix (-O of reference) is attached at the end of the end of the verb. This relative suffix agrees in class to the noun it refers to. (See : [Chapter 31 - The "-O" of Reference.](#))

SUBJECT PREFIX + VERB RADICAL + O

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

NI-FANYA-YE	-> nifanyaye	I who make
U-FANYA-YE	-> ufanyaye	you who make
A-FANYA-YE	-> afanyaye	he / she who makes
TU-FANYA-O	-> tufanyao	we who make
M-FANYA-O	-> mfanyao	you who make
WA-FANYA-O	-> wafanyao	they who make

OTHER MODELS : **KUFAA** = TO BE CONVENIENT

GENDER / Classes	EXAMPLES	TRANSLATION
M- (Class 1) WA- (Class 2)	mtu afaayo watu wafaayo	the person who is suitable people who are suitable
M- (Class 3) MI- (Class 4)	mti ufaayo miti ifaayo	a tree which is suitable trees which are suitable
JI- (Class 5) MA- (Class 6)	gari lifaalo magari yafaayo	a car which is suitable cars which are suitable

KI- (Class 7) VI- (Class 8)	kiti kifaacho viti vifaavyo	a chair which is suitable chairs which are suitable
N- (Class 9) N- (Class 10)	nguo ifaayo nguo zifaazo	a garment which is suitable clothes which are suitable
U- (Class 11) plural (CI 10)	uma ufaao nyuma zifaazo	a fork which is suitable forks which are suitable

NOTES :

- Verbs of Arabic origin behave like ordinary verbs :
Nifikiriye = I who think
Ajibuye = he / she who answers
- Monosyllabic verbs drop their infinitive prefix **KU-** :
Nijaye = I who come
Tulao = we who eat
Siku zijazo = coming days

EXAMPLES :

Mwezi ujao	Next month
Mwaka ujao	Next year
Wiki ijayo	Next week
Alhamisi ijayo	Next Thursday
Mtoto asomaye	The child who learns
Shamba litufaalo	A plantation that suits <u>us</u>
Mwalimu afundishaye watoto wao	The teacher who teaches these children
Siku zijazo zitakuwa na mvua nyingi	The coming days will be very rainy
Nilifika mwaka jana, nitaondoka mwaka ujao	I arrived last year, I will go next year
Mkutano utanza Jumanne ijayo	The meeting will start next Tuesday

2. NEGATIVE FORM :

The General Relative has no negative form of its own. It is the General Negative which is naturally used since it does not include any tense markers either. (See : [Chapter 52 - The Relative Verbal Construction.](#))

3. PARTICULAR CASES : KUWA & KUWA NA :

The verbs **KUWA** (= to be) and **KUWA NA** (= to have) possess a particular relative construction that uses the verbal roots **LI** in the affirmative and **SI** in the negative.

PRESENT - AFFIRMATIVE FORM

KUWA descriptive	KUWA locative	Translation
NILIYE	NILIEPO	I who am
ULIYE	ULIEPO	you who are
ALIYE	ALIEPO	he / she who is
TULIO	TULIOPPO	we who are
MLIO	MLIOPPO	you who are
WALIO	WALIOPPO	they who are

PRESENT - NEGATIVE FORM

KUWA descriptive	KUWA locative	Translation
NISIYE	NISIEPO	I who is not
USIYE	USIEPO	you who are not
ASIYE	ASIEPO	he / she who is not
TUSIO	TUSIOPPO	we who are not
MSIO	MSIOPPO	you who are not
WASIO	WASIOPPO	they who are not

The verbs **KUWA** et **KUWA NA** may also be conjugated in the Simple Past and the Future affirmative. Here is the conjugation for the 3rd person singular and plural :

SIMPLE PAST - AFFIRMATIVE FORM

KUWA descriptive	KUWA locative	Translation
ALIYEKUWA	ALIYEKUWAPO	he / she who was
WALIOKUWA	WALIOKUWAPO	they who were

FUTURE - AFFIRMATIVE FORM

KUWA descriptive	KUWA locative	translation
ATAKAYEKUWA	ATAKAYEKUWAPO	he / she who will be
WATAKAOKUWA	WATAKAOKUWAPO	they who will be

To conjugate the verb **KUWA NA** (= avoir), we simply take up the conjugation of the verb **KUWA** descriptive and add the word **NA** after the verb.

EXAMPLES :

Wanafunzi walio na vitabu.	The pupils who have books.
Vitabu walivyo navyo.	The books that they have.
Vitavu walivyokuwa navyo.	The books that they had.
Vitabu watakavyokuwa navyo.	The books that they will have.
Kwa wasiwasi aliokuwa nao, hakusema neno.	Because of the doubt that he had, he didn't say a word.
Haya ni maneno yasiyo na maana.	These are words without meaning.
Huoni mzigo nilio nao hapa ?	You do not see the luggage that I have here ?
Hakuna masika yasiyo na mbu.	There is no rain season without mosquitoes.

PROVERB :

Akufaaye kwa dhiki ndiye rafiki

VOCABULARY

Ku-changanyika	to mix	Ku-pasa	to be appropriate
Ku-danganya	to mislead	Ku-piga kura	to vote
Ku-gawa	to divide	Ku-pindua	to overturn
Ku-kagua	to inspect	Ku-shtaki	to accuse
Ku-kodi	to rent	Ku-tawala	to govern
Ku-kwama	to break down	Ku-tegemea	to depend

EXERCISES**EXERCISE 1** : Translate into Swahili :

1. I will go to England next year.
2. A child who studies is a child who will succeed in life.
3. I think that the coming month will be very rainy.
4. The examination will begin next Thursday.
5. I seek somebody who sells elephant tusks.
6. Is there anybody here who speaks French ?
7. People who vote are not numerous.
8. I seek to rent a house which is convenient for us.
9. The teachers who teach these children are Europeans.
10. We will see each other next week.

EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Hawa ni wanafunzi wapendao kusoma.
2. Usiniambie maneno yasiyo na maana.
3. Nitakulipa mshahara upasao.
4. Nisaidie na masanduku niliyo nayo.
5. Kama ujuavyo, ndovu wameharibu mavuno yetu.
6. Shida zetu ni zile zile uzijuazo.
7. Nipe vifaa zilizopo kabatini.
8. Si rahisi kupata vyatu vifaavyo.
9. Ninatafuta vibarua walimao vizuri.
10. Mtoto aliye hodari zaidi atapewa zawadi.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



Chapter 54 - Auxiliary Verbs

Apart from the verb **KUWA** (= to be) which is employed in the formation of compound tenses, a certain number of Swahili verbs can be used as auxiliaries in front of a second verb which is generally, although not exclusively, conjugated in the infinitive. These verbs employed as auxiliaries add a precision on the way the action takes place.

1. KWISHA :

The auxiliary **KWISHA** (= to end, to finish) shows that an action has already taken place. That is why this auxiliary is usually conjugated in the Past Perfect tense.

- In the affirmative, the verbal construction with **KWISHA** has undergone a significant evolution, since beginning from two distinct verbal elements, we have arrived today at a unique contracted verbal form where the particle **-SHA-** simply reinforces the tense marker **-ME-** of the Past Perfect.

EXAMPLE :

2 distinct verbs :	Nimekwisha kupata chumba.	I have already got a room.
The 2nd verb drops its KU- :	Nimekwisha pata chumba.	I have already got a room.
The 2 verbs fuse together :	Nimeshapata chumba.	I have already got a room.

- In the negative form, we simply use the Past Perfect negative :

EXAMPLE :

Sijapata chumba or :	Sijapata chumba bado	I haven't got a room yet.
-----------------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------------

- In a relative clause, the tense marker **-MESHA-** can be kept thanks to the use of the independant relative pronoun. Alternatively, we can use **KWISHA + Verb radical** in the Simple Past relative :

EXAMPLE :

Relative pronoun :	Mimi ambaye nimeshapata chumba.	I who have already got a room.
Simple Past relative :	Mimi niliyekwisha pata chumba.	I who have already got a room.

- **KWISHA** can also be used in the **-KI-** tense and then means "when" or "if" :

EXAMPLE :

Nikiisha pata chumba, nitaanza safari yangu	When I have got a room, I'll start my journey to
--	--

Zanzibar.

Zanzibar.

2. KUJA :

The auxiliary **KUJA** (= to come) shows that an action will be carried out in the future. It is therefore conjugated in the Future and is followed by a 2nd verb in the infinitive.

EXAMPLES :

Nitakapopata mshahara, nitakwenda kununua nguo mpya.

When I get a salary, I will go to buy new clothes.

Tukijifunza kwa bidii, tutakuja kusema kiswahili safi.

If we study hard, we will succeed in speaking a good Swahili.

3. KWENDA :

the auxiliary **KWENDA** (= to go) indicates that an action is on the point of being carried out. It is usually followed by a passive verb in the infinitive.

- The auxiliary **KWENDA** is conjugated in the Past Perfect :

EXAMPLES :

Mgonjwa amekwenda kupasuliwa.

The patient is to be operated.

Mwanafunzi amekwenda kuitwa.

The pupil has just been called.

Chakula kimekwenda kuletwa.

Food is being brought.

- In the Habitual Present, **HUENDA** carries the notion of "maybe" :

EXAMPLES :

Huenda dereva akapata shida njiani.

Maybe the driver has got a problem on the road.

Huenda yeye ni mgonjwa.

Maybe he is sick.

4. KUPATA :

The auxiliary **KUPATA** expresses the opportunity or the possibility of carrying out something.

- **KUPATA** conjugated in the future or in the imperative is followed by a second verb in the infinitive.

EXAMPLES :**Fungua dirisha ili hewa safi ipate kuingia.**

Open the window to let fresh air in.

Tufanye haraka tupate kumaliza mapema.

Let's hurry so that we can finish early.

Nitakapopata likizo, nitapata kwenda safari.

When I get holidays, I'll be able to go on a journey.

- **KUPATA** conjugated in the present indefinite is used to express "about, approximately". Three different verbal constructions can be used :

	CI 9 subject prefix YA-	Prefix agreeing with the subject	General Relative
1.	Yapata watu mia	Wapata watu mia	Watu wapatao mia
2.	Yapata vitabu vinane	Vyapata vitabu vinane	Vitabu vipatavyo vinane
3.	Yapata meza ishirini	Zapata meza ishirini	Meza zipatazo ishirini

1. About a hundred people.
2. About 8 books.
3. About twenty tables.

5. -NGALI :

-NGALI which is already known as the tense marker of the Past Conditional (See : [Chapter 47 - The Past Conditional](#)) can also be used as an autonomous auxiliary verb. It can be translated by : "always, still". **-NGALI** is usually conjugated in the Present Indefinite, while the second verb is in the Present Definite or in the **-KI-** tense.

EXAMPLES :**Tungali tunangoja.**

We are still waiting.

Mwalimu angali ana wasiwasi.

The teacher still has doubts.

Angalipo nyumbani.

He / she is still at home.

Maji yangaliko kisimani.

there is still water in the well.

However, there is a much more simple way of expressing the same, with the adverb **bado** :

Bado ni mtoto.

He / she is still a child.

Maji bado yako kisimani.

There is still water in the well.

Yumo nyumbani bado.

He / she is still at home.



Chapter 55 - Compound Tenses

Although the mastery of compound tenses is not essential to speak correct Swahili at a basic level, yet it is preferable to know the existence of these tenses and to be able to recognize their forms as well as the meaning attached to them. This will be the topic of this last chapter.

1. VERBAL CONSTRUCTION :

Compound tenses in Swahili are always made up of two verbs :

- The first verb is the auxiliary verb **KUWA** = to be.
- Followed by a second verb which is the lexical verb.

Subj. Prefix + Tense + KUWA // Subj. Prefix + Tense + VERB

Both verbs must carry the subject prefix corresponding to the noun they refer to. In a negative sentence, it is usually the auxiliary verb only which is in the negative, while the lexical verb remains in the affirmative.

Tense combinations are quite numerous. We shall see only the most common here. For a foreigner, it is often difficult to grasp all the minute shades of meaning implied in the use of the compound tenses, all the more since they are translated roughly the same way in English.

2. PRESENT COMPOUND TENSES :

AUXILIARY VERB	LEXICAL VERB	Translation
NI-NA-PO-KUWA	NI-NA-FANYA NI-KI-FANYA NI-ME-FANYA	when I make when I am making when I have made

The tense marker **-NA-** of the Present Definite can only be used with **KUWA** carrying the locative relative **PO**, to indicate when the action takes place :

Mtoto anapokuwa akicheza.

When the child is playing.

Anapokuwa anatengeneza gari lake.

When he repairs his car.

Anapokuwa amemaliza kazi.

When he has finished work.

3. PAST COMPOUND TENSES :

AUXILIARY VERB	LEXICAL VERB	Translation
NI-LI-KUWA NI-KA-WA	NI-NA-FANYA NI-KI-FANYA NI-ME-FANYA	I made I was making I had done

EXAMPLES :

Tulipokuwa Ulaya tulikuwa tunatumia fedha za kigeni. When we were in Europe we used foreign currency.

Watoto walikuwa wakicheza. The children were playing.

Tulikuwa tumekula. We had eaten.

The Simple Past in **-LI-** of the auxiliary verb can be replaced by the **-KA-** tense :

Masimba walikuwa barabarani, kwa hivyo tuliacha kuendesha, tukawa tunawaangalia tu. There were lions on the road, therefore we ceased driving and we watched them.

Alikimbia hata akawa amechoka. He / she ran until he / she was tired.

4. FUTURE COMPOUND TENSES :

AUXILIARY VERB	LEXICAL VERB	Translation
NI-TA-KUWA	NI-NA-FANYA NI-KI-FANYA NI-ME-FANYA	I will make I will be making I will have done

EXAMPLES :

Mtoto atakuwa anacheza. The child will play.

Mwaka ujao tutakuwa tukikaa katika nyumba yetu mpya. Next year we will be staying in our new house.

Tutakuwa tumeshiba kabla ya kumaliza chakula. We will be satiated before finishing the meal.

5. CONDITIONAL COMPOUND TENSES :

AUXILIARY VERB	LEXICAL VERB	Translation
NI-NGE-KUWA	NI-KI-FANYA NI-ME-FANYA	I would be making
NI-NGALI-KUWA	NI-KI-FANYA NI-ME-FANYA	I would have been making

EXAMPLES :

Angekuwa akienda mjini ningemwomba lifti.

If he was going to town, I would ask him for a lift.

Ungekuwa umesikia redio, ungeweza kuniambia habari za leo.

If you had listend to the radio, you could give me today's news.

Angalikuwa akisoma kwa mwaka mzima, angalifaulu mtihani wake.

If he had studied all the year, he would have passed his exam.

Ungalikuwa umepokea barua yangu, ungalijua kwamba nilitazamia kufika leo.

If you had received my letter, you would have known I was coming today.

6. GENERAL NOTES :

A. USE OF A RELATIVE :

When a relative is employed with a compound tense, the relative infix is inserted in the auxiliary verb :

Mtoto aliyekuwa amelala.

The child who was sleeping.

Alipokuwa amemaliza kazi yake, akarudi kwao.

When he had finished his work, he came back home.

Hao ni wezi waliokuwa wanaiba huku mjini.

These are the thieves who were robbing downtown.

B. USE OF AN OBJECT INFIX :

When a complement object is used with a compound tense, the object infix is inserted in the lexical verb :

Nilikuwa nimekisoma.

I had read it.

Niliwapa chakula nilichokuwa nimekipika asubuhi.

I gave them the food I had cooked this morning.

Previous Chapter	Table of Contents
----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

